
Write An LLVM Backend Tutorial For Cpu0

Release 3.2.2

Chen Chung-Shu gamma_chen@yahoo.com.tw
Anoushe Jamshidi ajamshidi@gmail.com

January 11, 2013

CONTENTS

1	About	1
1.1	Authors	1
1.2	Revision history	1
1.3	Licensing	1
1.4	Preface	2
1.5	Prerequisites	2
1.6	Outline of chapters	2
2	Cpu0 Instruction and LLVM Target Description	5
2.1	CPU0 processor architecture	5
2.2	LLVM structure	9
2.3	Target Description td	13
2.4	Write td (Target Description)	13
2.5	Write cmake file	22
2.6	Target Registration	24
2.7	Build libraries and td	25
3	Back end structure	29
3.1	TargetMachine structure	29
3.2	Add RegisterInfo	35
3.3	Add AsmPrinter	36
3.4	LLVM Code Generation Sequence	39
3.5	DAG (Directed Acyclic Graph)	41
3.6	Instruction Selection	41
3.7	Add Cpu0DAGToDAGISel class	43
3.8	Add Prologue/Epilogue functions	45
3.9	Summary of this Chapter	47
4	Other instructions	49
4.1	Support arithmetic instructions	49
4.2	Operator “not” !	52
4.3	Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz	55
4.4	Adjust cpu0 instructions	57
4.5	Local variable pointer	60
4.6	Operator mod, %	61
4.7	Full support %	70
4.8	Summary	74
5	Generate obj file	75

5.1	Translate into obj file	75
5.2	Backend Target Registration Structure	76
6	Global variable, struct and array	89
6.1	Global variable	89
6.2	Array and struct support	97
7	Control flow statement	105
7.1	Control flow statement	105
7.2	RISC CPU knowledge	116
8	Function call	117
8.1	Mips stack frame	117
8.2	Load incoming arguments from stack frame	120
8.3	Store outgoing arguments to stack frame	127
8.4	Fix the wrong offset in storing arguments to stack frame	134
8.5	Pseudo hook instruction ADJCALLSTACKDOWN and ADJCALLSTACKUP	137
8.6	Handle \$gp register in PIC addressing mode	139
8.7	Variable number of arguments	148
8.8	Verify DIV for operator %	160
8.9	Summary of this chapter	161
9	ELF	163
9.1	ELF format	163
9.2	ELF header and Section header table	165
9.3	Relocation Record	166
9.4	Cpu0 ELF related files	171
9.5	lld	171
10	Appendix A: Getting Started: Installing LLVM and the Cpu0 example code	173
10.1	Setting Up Your Mac	173
10.2	Setting Up Your Linux Machine	190
11	Todo List	197
12	Book example code	199
13	Alternate formats	201

ABOUT

1.1 Authors

陳鍾樞

Chen Chung-Shu gamma_chen@yahoo.com.tw

<http://jonathan2251.github.com/web/index.html>

Anoushe Jamshidi ajamshidi@gmail.com

1.2 Revision history

Version 3.2.2, Released January 10, 2013 Add section “Full support %” and section “Verify DIV for operator %”.

Version 3.2.1, Released January 7, 2013 Add Footnote for references. Reorganize chapters (Move bottom part of chapter “Global variable” to chapter “Other instruction”; Move section “Translate into obj file” to new chapter “Generate obj file”. Fix errors in Fig/otherinst/2.png and Fig/otherinst/3.png.

Version 3.2.0, Released January 1, 2013 Add chapter Function. Move Chapter “Installing LLVM and the Cpu0 example code” from beginning to Appendix A. Add subsection “Install other tools on Linux”. Add chapter ELF.

Version 3.1.2, Released December 15, 2012 Fix section 6.1 error by add “def : Pat<(brcond RC:\$cond, bb:\$dst), (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:\$cond, ZEROReg), bb:\$dst)>,” in last pattern. Modify section 5.5 Fix bug Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp SW to ST. Correct LW to LD; LB to LDB; SB to STB.

Version 3.1.1, Released November 28, 2012 Add Revision history. Correct ldi instruction error (replace ldi instruction with addiu from the beginning and in the all example code). Move ldi instruction change from section of “Adjust cpu0 instruction and support type of local variable pointer” to Section “CPU0 processor architecture”. Correct some English & typing errors.

1.3 Licensing

Todo

Add info about LLVM documentation licensing.

1.4 Preface

The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure provides a versatile structure for creating new backends. Creating a new backend should not be too difficult once you familiarize yourself with this structure. However, the available backend documentation is fairly high level and leaves out many details. This tutorial will provide step-by-step instructions to write a new backend for a new target architecture from scratch.

We will use the Cpu0 architecture as an example to build our new backend. Cpu0 is a simple RISC architecture that has been designed for educational purposes. More information about Cpu0, including its instruction set, is available [here](#). The Cpu0 example code referenced in this book can be found [here](#). As you progress from one chapter to the next, you will incrementally build the backend's functionality.

This tutorial was written using the LLVM 3.1 Mips backend as a reference. Since Cpu0 is an educational architecture, it is missing some key pieces of documentation needed when developing a compiler, such as an Application Binary Interface (ABI). We implement our backend borrowing information from the Mips ABI as a guide. You may want to familiarize yourself with the relevant parts of the Mips ABI as you progress through this tutorial.

1.5 Prerequisites

Readers should be comfortable with the C++ language and Object-Oriented Programming concepts. LLVM has been developed and implemented in C++, and it is written in a modular way so that various classes can be adapted and reused as often as possible.

Already having conceptual knowledge of how compilers work is a plus, and if you already have implemented compilers in the past you will likely have no trouble following this tutorial. As this tutorial will build up an LLVM backend step-by-step, we will introduce important concepts as necessary.

This tutorial references the following materials. We highly recommend you read these documents to get a deeper understanding of what the tutorial is teaching:

[The Architecture of Open Source Applications Chapter on LLVM](#)

[LLVM's Target-Independent Code Generation documentation](#)

[LLVM's TableGen Fundamentals documentation](#)

[LLVM's Writing an LLVM Compiler Backend documentation](#)

[Description of the Tricore LLVM Backend](#)

[Mips ABI document](#)

1.6 Outline of chapters

Chapter of Cpu0 Instruction and LLVM Target Description:

Introduce Cpu0 and LLVM architecture, Target Description td, cmake and LLVMBuild files, Target Registration. And shows how to start a backend and build it through our example code Cpu0. Around 750 lines of source code are added by the end of this chapter.

Chapter of Back end Structure:

Introduce the backend structure by UML graph, and continue to add code in each section. Around 2300 lines of source code added in this chapter. These 2300 lines of source code is common in backend design. Many code are same from backend to backend except the backend name. At end of this chapter, an LLVM backend structure for cpu0 is created with three instructions support to generate the assembly output file.

Chapter of Other instructions:

Over ten of C operators and their corresponding LLVM IR instructions introduced in this chapter. Around 345 lines of source code (most are in .td Target Description file) are added. With these 345 lines, it can translate `+`, `-`, `*`, `/`, `&`, `|`, `^`, `<<`, `>>`, `!` and `%` into assembly code. The `llc` debug option and debug tool **Graphviz** which supported by LLVM introduced in this chapter.

Chapter of Generate obj file:

Add the obj file format generated support in cpu0 backend, and introduce the cpu0 backend Target Registration structure. The Registration structure is common in backend design. With these 700 lines of code added, cpu0 can handle big and little endian obj file generated.

Chapter of Global variable, struct and array:

Global variable, struct and array support added in this chapter. Over 300 lines of source code needed in global variable access while 345 lines needed for ten of operators in chapter of Other instructions. The cpu0 support PIC and static addressing mode. These two modes are explained in this chapter.

Chapter of Control flow statement:

The **if**, **else**, **while**, **for**, **goto** flow control statements support is added in this chapter. Around 150 lines of source code added in this chapter.

Chapter of Function call:

The stack frame, incoming & outgoing arguments, and LLVM corresponding handle functions introduced in this chapter. Over 700 lines of source code added in this chapter.

Chapter of ELF:

Like many backend. Cpu0 support ELF obj format generated. The ELF format and binutils tools (not a part of LLVM) introduced and demonstrate the backend designers how to use this ELF tool to verify and analysis the backend obj.

Chapter of Appendix A:

Include the LLVM source code, development tools installation, and environment setting on iMac and Linux platform.

CPU0 INSTRUCTION AND LLVM TARGET DESCRIPTION

Before you start, you should know that you can always examine existing LLVM backend code and attempt to port what you find for your own target architecture. The majority of this code can be found in the `/lib/Target` directory of your root LLVM directory. As most major RISC instruction set architectures have some similarities, this may be the avenue you might try if you are both an experienced programmer and knowledgeable of compiler backends. However, there is a steep learning curve and you may easily get held up debugging your new backend. You can easily spend a lot of time tracing which methods are callbacks of some function, or which are calling some overridden method deep in the LLVM codebase - and with a codebase as large as LLVM, this can easily become a headache. This tutorial will help you work through this process while learning the fundamentals of LLVM backend design. It will show you what is necessary to get your first backend functional and complete, and it should help you understand how to debug your backend when it does not produce desirable output using the output provided by LLVM.

This chapter shows you the `cpu0` instruction format first. Next, the `llvm` structure is introduced to you by copy and paste the related article from `llvm` web site. The `llvm` structure introduced here is extracted from the `asop` web site. You can read the whole article from the `asop` web site. After that we will show you how to write register and instruction definitions (Target Description File) which will be used in next chapter.

2.1 CPU0 processor architecture

We copy and redraw figures in english in this section. This web site ¹ is chinese version and here ² is english version.

2.1.1 Brief introduction

CPU0 is a 32-bit processor which has registers R0 .. R15, IR, MAR, MDR, etc., and its structure is shown below.

Uses of each register as follows:

2.1.2 Instruction Set for CPU0

The CPU0 instruction divided into three types, L-type usually load the saved instruction, A-type arithmetic instruction-based J-type usually jump instruction, the following figure shows the three types of instruction encoding format.

The following is the CPU0 processor's instruction table format

In the second edition of CPU0_v2 we fill the following command:

¹ <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0>

² http://translate.google.com.tw/translate?js=n&prev=_t&hl=zh-TW&ie=UTF-8&layout=2&eotf=1&sl=zh-CN&tl=en&u=http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0

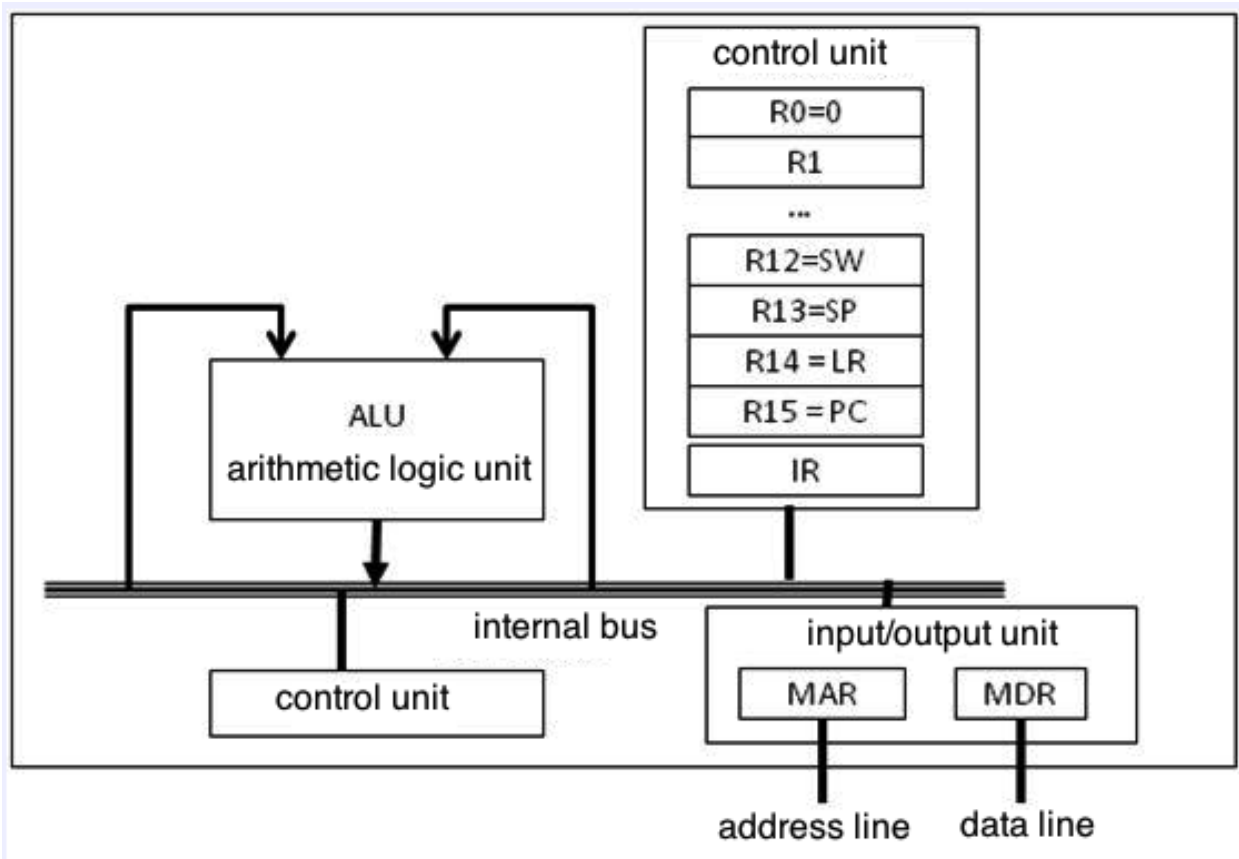


Figure 2.1: The structure of the processor of CPU0

IR	Instruction register
R0	Constant registers, its value is always 0.
R1 ~ R11	General-purpose registers.
R12	Status register (Status Word: SW)
R13	Stack pointer register (Stack Pointer: SP)
R14	Link register (Link Register: LR)
R15	Program counter (Program Counter: PC)
MAR	Address register (Memory Address Register)
MDR	Data register (Memory Data Register)

Figure 2.2: Cpu0 registers table

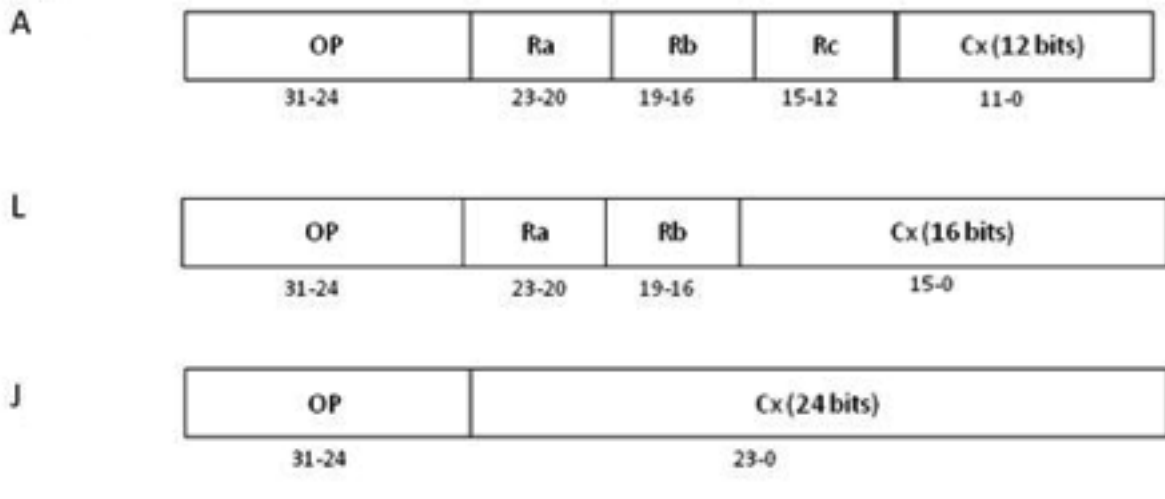


Figure 2.3: CPU0 three instruction formats

2.1.3 Status register

CPU0 status register contains the state of the N, Z, C, V, and I, T and other interrupt mode bit. Its structure is shown below.

When CMP Ra, Rb instruction execution, the state flag will thus change.

If $Ra > Rb$, then the setting state of $N = 0$, $Z = 0$. If $Ra < Rb$, it will set the state of $N = 1$, $Z = 0$. If $Ra = Rb$, then the setting state of $N = 0$, $Z = 1$.

So conditional jump the JGT, JLT, JGE, JLE, JEQ, JNE instruction jumps N, Z flag in the status register.

2.1.4 The execution of the instruction step

CPU0 has three stage pipeline: Instruction fetch, Decode and Execution.

1. Instruction fetch
 - Action 1. The instruction fetch: $IR = [PC]$
 - Action 2. Update program counter: $PC = PC + 4$
2. Decode
 - Action 3. Decode: Control unit decodes IR, then set data flow switch and ALU operation mode.
3. Execute
 - Action 4. Execute: Data flow into ALU. After ALU done the operation, the result stored back into destination register.

2.1.5 Replace ldi instruction by addiu instruction

We have recognized the ldi instruction is a bad design and replace it with mips instruction addiu. The reason we replace ldi with addiu is that ldi use only one register even though ldi is L type format and has two registers, as *Cpu0 ldi instruction*. Mips addiu which allow programmer to do load constant to register like ldi, and add constant to a

type	format	instruction	OP	meaning	syntax	semantic
Load / Store	L	LD	00	Load word	LD Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow [Rb+Cx]$
	L	ST	01	Store word	ST Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \rightarrow [Rb+Cx]$
	L	LDB	02	Load byte	LDB Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Cx]$
	L	STB	03	Store byte	STB Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \rightarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Cx]$
	A	LDR	04	LD (register version)	LDR Ra, [Rb+Rc]	$Ra \rightarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Rc]$
	A	STR	05	LD (register version)	STR Ra, [Rb+Rc]	$Ra \rightarrow [Rb+Rc]$
	A	LBR	06	LDB (register version)	LBR Ra, [Rb+Rc]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Rc]$
	A	SBR	07	STB (register version)	SBR Ra, [Rb+Rc]	$Ra \rightarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Rc]$
	L	LDI	08	Load immediate	LDI Ra, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Cx$
Mathematic	A	CMP	10	Compare	CMP Ra, Rb	$SW \leftarrow Ra \geq Rb$
	A	MOV	12	Move	MOV Ra, Rb	$Ra \leftarrow Rb$
	A	ADD	13	Add	ADD Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb + Rc$
	A	SUB	14	Subtract	SUB Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb - Rc$
	A	MUL	15	Multiply	MUL Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb * Rc$
	A	DIV	16	Divide	DIV Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb / Rc$
	A	AND	18	And	AND Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ and } Rc$
	A	OR	19	Or	OR Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ or } Rc$
	A	XOR	1A	Exclusive Or	XOR Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ xor } Rc$
	A	ROL	1C	Rotate Left	ROL Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ rol } Cx$
	A	ROR	1D	Rotate Right	ROR Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ ror } Cx$
	A	SHL	1E	Shift Left	SHL Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \ll Cx$
	A	SHR	1F	Shift Right	SHR, Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \gg Cx$
Jump	J	JEQ	20	Jump (=)	JEQ Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JNE	21	Jump (!=)	JNE Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JLT	22	Jump (<)	JLT Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JGT	23	Jump (>)	JGT Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JLE	24	Jump (<=)	JLE Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JGE	25	Jump (>=)	JGE Cx	if $SW(=)$ $PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	JMP	26	Jump (unconditional)	JMP Cx	$PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	SWI	2A	Software Interrupt	SWI Cx	$LR \leftarrow PC; PC \leftarrow Cx$
	J	JSUB	2B	Jump Subroutine	JSUB Cx	$LR \leftarrow PC; PC \leftarrow PC + Cx$
	J	RET	2C	Return	RET	$PC \leftarrow LR$
Push / Pop	A	PUSH	30	Push word	PUSH Ra	$SP \leftarrow SP - 4; [SP] = Ra;$
	A	POP	31	Pop word	POP Ra	$Ra = [SP]; SP \leftarrow SP + 4;$
	A	PUSHB	32	Push byte	PUSHB Ra	$SP \leftarrow SP; [SP] = Ra; (\text{byte})$
	A	POPB	33	Pop byte	POPB Ra	$Ra = [SP]; SP \leftarrow SP + 1; (\text{byte})$

Figure 2.4: CPU0 instruction table

Type	Format	Instruction	OP	Explain	Grammar	Semantic
Floating point operation	A	FADD	41	Floating-point addition	FADD Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra = Rb + Rc$
Floating point operation	A	FSUB	42	Floating-point subtraction	FSUB Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra = Rb - Rc$
Floating point operation	A	FMUL	43	Floating-point multiplication	FMUL Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra = Rb * Rc$
Floating point operation	A	FDIV	44	Floating-point division	FDIV Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra = Rb / Rc$
Interrupt handling	J	IRET	2D	Interrupt return	IRET	$PC = LR; INT = 0$

Figure 2.5: CPU0_v2 instruction table

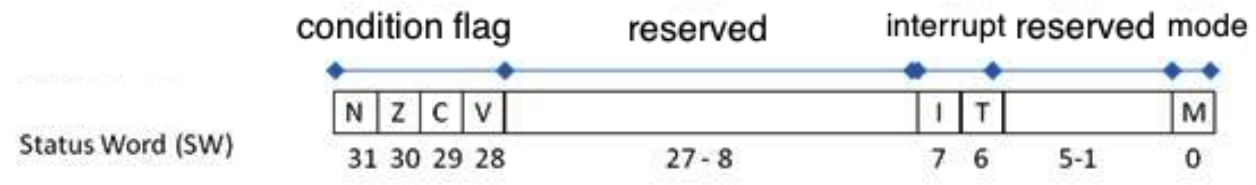


Figure 2.6: CPU0 status register

register. So, it's powerful and fully contains the ldi ability. These two instructions format as *Cpu0 ldi instruction* and *Mips addiu instruction format*.

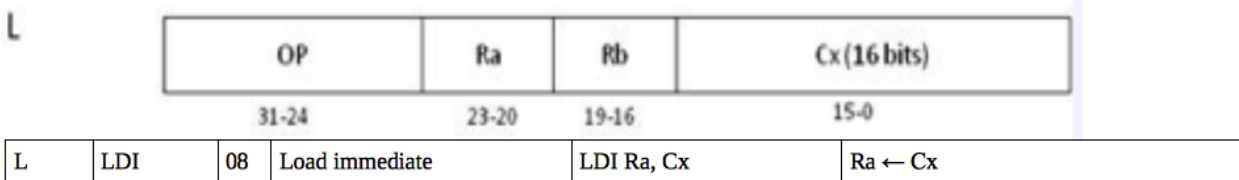


Figure 2.7: Cpu0 ldi instruction

From *Cpu0 ldi instruction* and *Mips addiu instruction format*, you can find ldi \$Ra, 5 can be replaced by addiu \$Ra, \$zero, 5. And more, addiu can do addiu \$Ra, \$Rb, 5 which add \$Rb and 5 then save to \$Ra, but ldi cannot. As a cpu design, it's common to redesign CPU instruction when find a better solution during design the compiler backend for that CPU. So, we add addiu instruction to cpu0. The cpu0 is my brother's work, I will find time to talk with him.

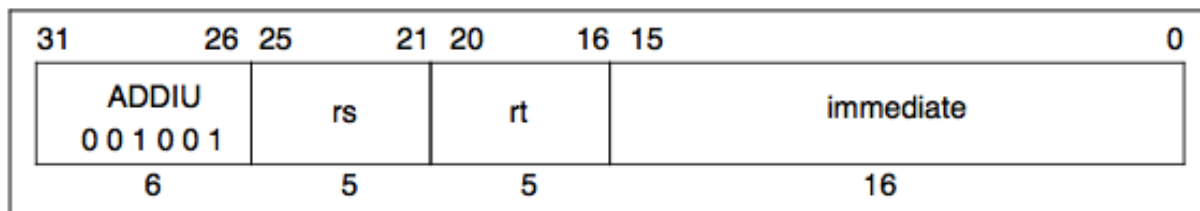
2.2 LLVM structure

Following came from AOSA³.

The most popular design for a traditional static compiler (like most C compilers) is the three phase design whose major components are the front end, the optimizer and the back end (*Tree major components of a Three Phase Compiler*).

³ <http://www.aosabook.org/en/llvm.html>

ADDIU Add Immediate Unsigned ADDIU



Format:

ADDIU rt, rs, immediate

Description:

The 16-bit *immediate* is sign-extended and added to the contents of general register *rs* to form the result. The result is placed into general register *rt*. No integer overflow exception occurs under any circumstances. In 64-bit mode, the operand must be valid sign-extended, 32-bit values.

The only difference between this instruction and the ADDI instruction is that ADDIU never causes an overflow exception.

Operation:

32 T: $\text{GPR}[rt] \leftarrow \text{GPR}[rs] + (\text{immediate}_{15})^{16} \parallel \text{immediate}_{15...0}$

64 T: $\text{temp} \leftarrow \text{GPR}[rs] + (\text{immediate}_{15})^{48} \parallel \text{immediate}_{15...0}$
 $\text{GPR}[rt] \leftarrow (\text{temp}_{31})^{32} \parallel \text{temp}_{31...0}$

Exceptions:

None

Figure 2.8: Mips addiu instruction format

The front end parses source code, checking it for errors, and builds a language-specific Abstract Syntax Tree (AST) to represent the input code. The AST is optionally converted to a new representation for optimization, and the optimizer and back end are run on the code.



Figure 2.9: Tree major components of a Three Phase Compiler

The optimizer is responsible for doing a broad variety of transformations to try to improve the code's running time, such as eliminating redundant computations, and is usually more or less independent of language and target. The back end (also known as the code generator) then maps the code onto the target instruction set. In addition to making correct code, it is responsible for generating good code that takes advantage of unusual features of the supported architecture. Common parts of a compiler back end include instruction selection, register allocation, and instruction scheduling.

This model applies equally well to interpreters and JIT compilers. The Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is also an implementation of this model, which uses Java bytecode as the interface between the front end and optimizer.

The most important win of this classical design comes when a compiler decides to support multiple source languages or target architectures. If the compiler uses a common code representation in its optimizer, then a front end can be written for any language that can compile to it, and a back end can be written for any target that can compile from it, as shown in *Retargetability*.

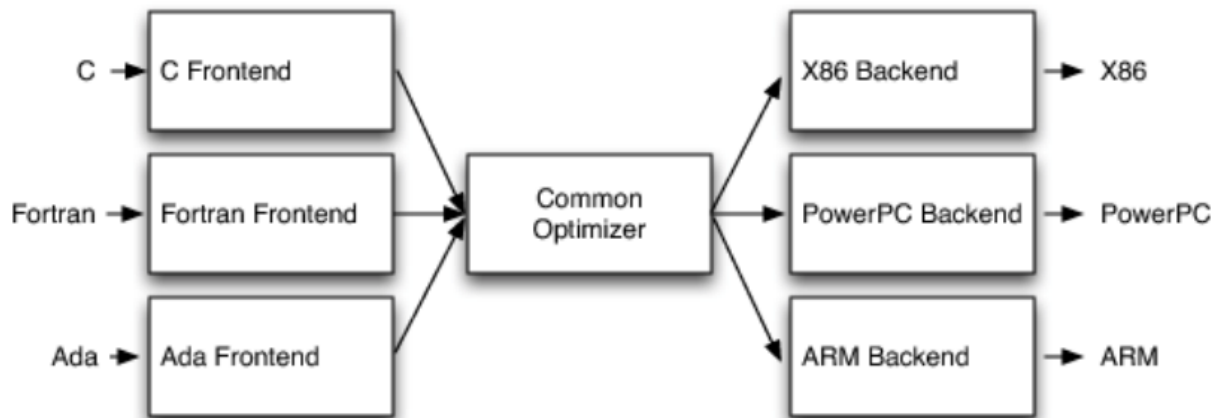


Figure 2.10: Retargetability

With this design, porting the compiler to support a new source language (e.g., Algol or BASIC) requires implementing a new front end, but the existing optimizer and back end can be reused. If these parts weren't separated, implementing a new source language would require starting over from scratch, so supporting N targets and M source languages would need $N \times M$ compilers.

Another advantage of the three-phase design (which follows directly from retargetability) is that the compiler serves a broader set of programmers than it would if it only supported one source language and one target. For an open source project, this means that there is a larger community of potential contributors to draw from, which naturally leads to more enhancements and improvements to the compiler. This is the reason why open source compilers that serve many communities (like GCC) tend to generate better optimized machine code than narrower compilers like FreePASCAL. This isn't the case for proprietary compilers, whose quality is directly related to the project's budget. For example, the Intel ICC Compiler is widely known for the quality of code it generates, even though it serves a narrow audience.

A final major win of the three-phase design is that the skills required to implement a front end are different than those required for the optimizer and back end. Separating these makes it easier for a “front-end person” to enhance and maintain their part of the compiler. While this is a social issue, not a technical one, it matters a lot in practice, particularly for open source projects that want to reduce the barrier to contributing as much as possible.

The most important aspect of its design is the LLVM Intermediate Representation (IR), which is the form it uses to represent code in the compiler. LLVM IR is designed to host mid-level analyses and transformations that you find in the optimizer section of a compiler. It was designed with many specific goals in mind, including supporting lightweight runtime optimizations, cross-function/interprocedural optimizations, whole program analysis, and aggressive restructuring transformations, etc. The most important aspect of it, though, is that it is itself defined as a first class language with well-defined semantics. To make this concrete, here is a simple example of a .ll file:

```
define i32 @add1(i32 %a, i32 %b) {
entry:
    %tmp1 = add i32 %a, %b
    ret i32 %tmp1
}
define i32 @add2(i32 %a, i32 %b) {
entry:
    %tmp1 = icmp eq i32 %a, 0
    br i1 %tmp1, label %done, label %recurse
recurse:
    %tmp2 = sub i32 %a, 1
    %tmp3 = add i32 %b, 1
    %tmp4 = call i32 @add2(i32 %tmp2, i32 %tmp3)
    ret i32 %tmp4
done:
    ret i32 %b
}
```

This LLVM IR corresponds to this C code, which provides two different ways to

```
add integers:
unsigned add1(unsigned a, unsigned b) {
    return a+b;
}
// Perhaps not the most efficient way to add two numbers.
unsigned add2(unsigned a, unsigned b) {
    if (a == 0) return b;
    return add2(a-1, b+1);
}
```

As you can see from this example, LLVM IR is a low-level RISC-like virtual instruction set. Like a real RISC instruction set, it supports linear sequences of simple instructions like add, subtract, compare, and branch. These instructions are in three address form, which means that they take some number of inputs and produce a result in a different register. LLVM IR supports labels and generally looks like a weird form of assembly language.

Unlike most RISC instruction sets, LLVM is strongly typed with a simple type system (e.g., i32 is a 32-bit integer, i32** is a pointer to pointer to 32-bit integer) and some details of the machine are abstracted away. For example, the calling convention is abstracted through call and ret instructions and explicit arguments. Another significant difference from machine code is that the LLVM IR doesn’t use a fixed set of named registers, it uses an infinite set of temporaries named with a % character.

Beyond being implemented as a language, LLVM IR is actually defined in three isomorphic forms: the textual format above, an in-memory data structure inspected and modified by optimizations themselves, and an efficient and dense on-disk binary “bitcode” format. The LLVM Project also provides tools to convert the on-disk format from text to binary: llvm-as assembles the textual .ll file into a .bc file containing the bitcode goop and llvm-dis turns a .bc file into a .ll file.

The intermediate representation of a compiler is interesting because it can be a “perfect world” for the compiler optimizer: unlike the front end and back end of the compiler, the optimizer isn’t constrained by either a specific source

language or a specific target machine. On the other hand, it has to serve both well: it has to be designed to be easy for a front end to generate and be expressive enough to allow important optimizations to be performed for real targets.

2.3 Target Description td

The “mix and match” approach allows target authors to choose what makes sense for their architecture and permits a large amount of code reuse across different targets. This brings up another challenge: each shared component needs to be able to reason about target specific properties in a generic way. For example, a shared register allocator needs to know the register file of each target and the constraints that exist between instructions and their register operands. LLVM’s solution to this is for each target to provide a target description in a declarative domain-specific language (a set of .td files) processed by the tblgen tool. The (simplified) build process for the x86 target is shown in *Simplified x86 Target Definition*.

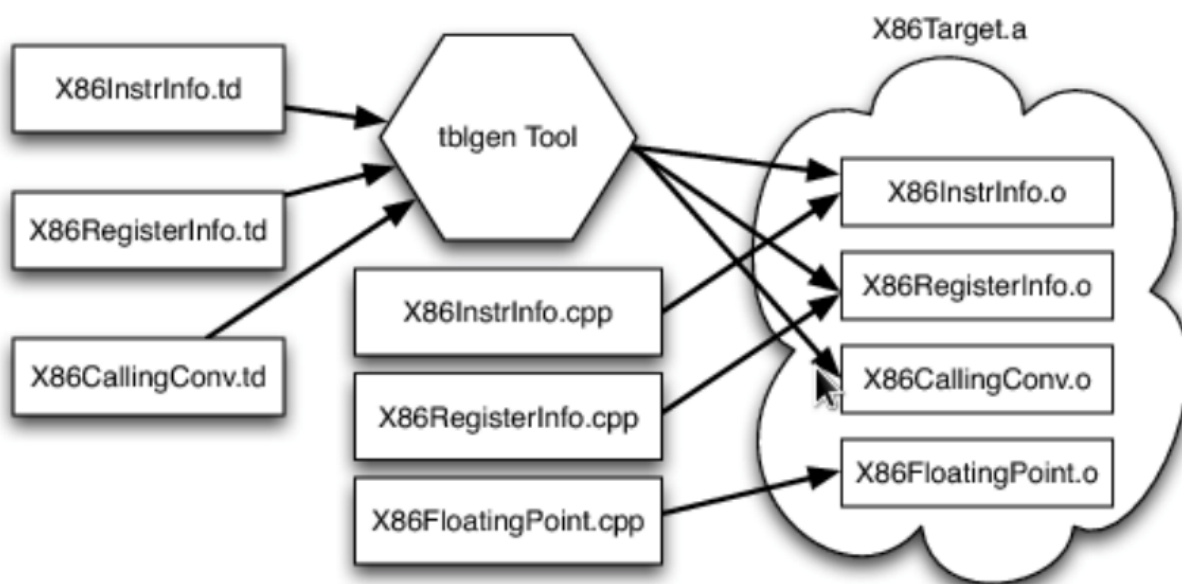


Figure 2.11: Simplified x86 Target Definition

The different subsystems supported by the .td files allow target authors to build up the different pieces of their target. For example, the x86 back end defines a register class that holds all of its 32-bit registers named “GR32” (in the .td files, target specific definitions are all caps) like this:

```
def GR32 : RegisterClass<[i32], 32,
  [EAX, ECX, EDX, ESI, EDI, EBX, EBP, ESP,
   R8D, R9D, R10D, R11D, R14D, R15D, R12D, R13D]> { ... }
```

2.4 Write td (Target Description)

The llvm using .td file (Target Description) to describe register and instruction format. After finish the .td files, llvm can generate C++ files (*.inc) by llvm-tblgen tools. The *.inc file is a text file (C++ file) with table driven in concept.

⁴ is the web site.

⁴ <http://llvm.org/docs/TableGenFundamentals.html>

Every back end has a target td which define it's own target information. File td is like C++ in syntax. For example the Cpu0.td as follows,

```
//====- Cpu0.td - Describe the Cpu0 Target Machine -----*- tablegen -*-====//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====//
// This is the top level entry point for the Cpu0 target.
//=====//
//=====//
// Target-independent interfaces
//=====//

include "llvm/Target/Target.td"
//=====//
// Register File, Calling Conv, Instruction Descriptions
//=====//

include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.td"
include "Cpu0Schedule.td"
include "Cpu0InstrInfo.td"

def Cpu0InstrInfo : InstrInfo;

def Cpu0 : Target {
  // def Cpu0InstrInfo : InstrInfo as before.
  let InstructionSet = Cpu0InstrInfo;
}
```

The registers td named Cpu0RegisterInfo.td included by Cpu0.td is defined as follows,

```
// Cpu0RegisterInfo.td
//=====//
// Declarations that describe the CPU0 register file
//=====//
// We have banks of 16 registers each.
class Cpu0Reg<string n> : Register<n> {
  field bits<4> Num;
  let Namespace = "Cpu0";
}

// Cpu0 CPU Registers
class Cpu0GPRReg<bits<4> num, string n> : Cpu0Reg<n> {
  let Num = num;
}
//=====//
// Registers
//=====//
let Namespace = "Cpu0" in {
  // General Purpose Registers
  def ZERO : Cpu0GPRReg< 0, "ZERO">, DwarfRegNum<[0]>;
  def AT   : Cpu0GPRReg< 1, "AT">,   DwarfRegNum<[1]>;
  def V0   : Cpu0GPRReg< 2, "2">,   DwarfRegNum<[2]>;
  def V1   : Cpu0GPRReg< 3, "3">,   DwarfRegNum<[3]>;
```

```

def A0    : Cpu0GPRReg< 4, "4">,    DwarfRegNum<[6]>;
def A1    : Cpu0GPRReg< 5, "5">,    DwarfRegNum<[7]>;
def T9    : Cpu0GPRReg< 6, "6">,    DwarfRegNum<[6]>;
def S0    : Cpu0GPRReg< 7, "7">,    DwarfRegNum<[7]>;
def S1    : Cpu0GPRReg< 8, "8">,    DwarfRegNum<[8]>;
def S2    : Cpu0GPRReg< 9, "9">,    DwarfRegNum<[9]>;
def GP    : Cpu0GPRReg< 10, "GP">,   DwarfRegNum<[10]>;
def FP    : Cpu0GPRReg< 11, "FP">,   DwarfRegNum<[11]>;
def SW    : Cpu0GPRReg< 12, "SW">,   DwarfRegNum<[12]>;
def SP    : Cpu0GPRReg< 13, "SP">,   DwarfRegNum<[13]>;
def LR    : Cpu0GPRReg< 14, "LR">,   DwarfRegNum<[14]>;
def PC    : Cpu0GPRReg< 15, "PC">,   DwarfRegNum<[15]>;
// def MAR : Cpu0GPRReg< 16, "MAR">,   DwarfRegNum<[16]>;
// def MDR : Cpu0GPRReg< 17, "MDR">,   DwarfRegNum<[17]>;
}
//=====//
// Register Classes
//=====//
def CPURegs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
  // Return Values and Arguments
  V0, V1, A0, A1,
  // Not preserved across procedure calls
  T9,
  // Callee save
  S0, S1, S2,
  // Reserved
  ZERO, AT, GP, FP, SW, SP, LR, PC)>;

```

In C++ the data layout is declared by class. Declaration tells the variable layout; definition allocates memory for the variable. For example,

```

class Date {           // declare Date
    int year, month, day;
};
Date date;             // define(instance) date

```

Just like C++ class, the keyword “**class**” is used for declaring data structure layout. Cpu0Reg<string n> declare a derived class from Register<n> which is declared by llvm already, where n is the argument of type string. In addition to inherited from all the fields of Register class, Cpu0Reg add a new field “Num” of type 4 bits. Namespace is same with C++ namespace. “**Def**” is used by define(instance) a concrete variable.

As above, we define a ZERO register which type is Cpu0GPRReg, it’s field Num is 0 (4 bits) and field n is “**ZERO**” (declared in Register class). Note the use of “**let**” expressions to override values that are initially defined in a super-class. For example, let Namespace = “**Cpu0**” in class Cpu0Reg, will override Namespace declared in Register class. The Cpu0RegisterInfo.td also define that CPURegs is a variable for type of RegisterClass, where the RegisterClass is a llvm built-in class. The type of RegisterClass is a set/group of Register, so CPURegs variable is defined with a set of Register.

The cpu0 instructions td is named to Cpu0InstrInfo.td which contents as follows,

```

/===- Cpu0InstrInfo.td - Target Description for Cpu0 Target -*- tablegen -*-//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====//
//

```

```
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of the TargetInstrInfo class.
//
//====-
//====-
// Instruction format superclass
//====-
include "Cpu0InstrFormats.td"
//====-
// Cpu0 profiles and nodes
//====-
def SDT_Cpu0Ret          : SDTypeProfile<0, 1, [SDTCisInt<0>]>;
// Return
def Cpu0Ret : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Ret", SDT_Cpu0Ret, [SDNPHasChain,
          SDNPOptInGlue]>;
//====-
// Cpu0 Operand, Complex Patterns and Transformations Definitions.
//====-
def simm16      : Operand<i32> {
  let DecoderMethod= "DecodeSimm16";
}
// Address operand
def mem : Operand<i32> {
  let PrintMethod = "printMemOperand";
  let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPURegs, simm16);
  let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}
// Node immediate fits as 16-bit sign extended on target immediate.
// e.g. addiu
def immSExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [{ return isInt<16>(N->getSExtValue()); }]>;

// Cpu0 Address Mode! SDNode frameindex could possibly be a match
// since load and store instructions from stack used it.
def addr : ComplexPattern<iPTR, 2, "SelectAddr", [frameindex], [SDNPWantParent]>
;

//====-
// Pattern fragment for load/store
//====-
class AlignedLoad<PatFrag Node> :
  PatFrag<(ops node:$ptr), (Node node:$ptr), [{
    LoadSDNode *LD = cast<LoadSDNode>(N);
    return LD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= LD->getAlignment();
  }]>;
class AlignedStore<PatFrag Node> :
  PatFrag<(ops node:$val, node:$ptr), (Node node:$val, node:$ptr), [{
    StoreSDNode *SD = cast<StoreSDNode>(N);
    return SD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= SD->getAlignment();
  }]>;
// Load/Store PatFrag.
def load_a      : AlignedLoad<load>;
def store_a     : AlignedStore<store>;
//====-
// Instructions specific format
//====-
// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 2 register operands.
class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
          Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
  FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$simm16),
```

```

        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
        [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIALu> {
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
}

// Move immediate imm16 to register ra.
class MoveImm<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
        Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
    FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $imm16"),
        [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIALu> {
    let rb = 0;
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
}

class FMem<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
        InstrItinClass itin>: FL<op, outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin> {
    bits<20> addr;
    let Inst{19-16} = addr{19-16};
    let Inst{15-0} = addr{15-0};
    let DecoderMethod = "DecodeMem";
}

// Memory Load/Store
let canFoldAsLoad = 1 in
class LoadM<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode, RegisterClass RC,
        Operand MemOpnd, bit Pseudo>:
    FMem<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins MemOpnd:$addr),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $addr"),
        [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode addr:$addr))], IILoad> {
    let isPseudo = Pseudo;
}

class StoreM<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode, RegisterClass RC,
        Operand MemOpnd, bit Pseudo>:
    FMem<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, MemOpnd:$addr),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $addr"),
        [(OpNode RC:$ra, addr:$addr)], IISTore> {
    let isPseudo = Pseudo;
}

// 32-bit load.
multiclass LoadM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
        bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : LoadM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, CPURegs, mem, Pseudo>;
}

// 32-bit store.
multiclass StoreM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
        bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : StoreM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, CPURegs, mem, Pseudo>;
}

//====-
// Instruction definition
//====-
//====-
// Cpu0I Instructions
//====-
/// Load and Store Instructions
/// aligned
defm LD : LoadM32<0x00, "ld", load_a>;

```

```
defm ST      : StoreM32<0x01, "st",  store_a>;

/// Arithmetic Instructions (ALU Immediate)
//def LDI     : MoveImm<0x08, "ldi", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
// add defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).
def ADDiu    : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

let isReturn=1, isTerminator=1, hasDelaySlot=1, isCodeGenOnly=1,
    isBarrier=1, hasCtrlDep=1 in
  def RET : FJ <0x2C, (outs), (ins CPURegs:$target),
      "ret\t$t$target", [(Cpu0Ret CPURegs:$target)], IIBranch>;

//=====//
// Arbitrary patterns that map to one or more instructions
//=====//
// Small immediates

def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
    (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in)>;
```

The Cpu0InstrFormats.td is included by Cpu0InstInfo.td as follows,

```
//====- Cpu0InstrFormats.td - Cpu0 Instruction Formats -----*- tablegen -*-====//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====//

//=====//
// Describe CPU0 instructions format
//
// CPU INSTRUCTION FORMATS
//
// opcode - operation code.
// ra      - dst reg, only used on 3 regs instr.
// rb      - src reg.
// rc      - src reg (on a 3 reg instr).
// cx      - immediate
//
//=====//

// Format specifies the encoding used by the instruction. This is part of the
// ad-hoc solution used to emit machine instruction encodings by our machine
// code emitter.
class Format<bits<4> val> {
  bits<4> Value = val;
}

def Pseudo    : Format<0>;
def FrmA      : Format<1>;
def FrmL      : Format<2>;
def FrmJ      : Format<3>;
def FrmFR     : Format<4>;
def FrmFI     : Format<5>;
def FrmOther  : Format<6>; // Instruction w/ a custom format
```

```
// Generic Cpu0 Format
class Cpu0Inst<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
               InstrItinClass itin, Format f>: Instruction
{
    field bits<32> Inst;
    Format Form = f;

    let Namespace = "Cpu0";

    let Size = 4;

    bits<8> Opcode = 0;

    // Top 8 bits are the 'opcode' field
    let Inst{31-24} = Opcode;

    let OutOperandList = outs;
    let InOperandList  = ins;

    let AsmString      = asmstr;
    let Pattern        = pattern;
    let Itinerary      = itin;

    //
    // Attributes specific to Cpu0 instructions...
    //
    bits<4> FormBits = Form.Value;

    // TSFlags layout should be kept in sync with Cpu0InstrInfo.h.
    let TSFlags{3-0}  = FormBits;

    let DecoderNamespace = "Cpu0";

    field bits<32> SoftFail = 0;
}

//=====//
// Format A instruction class in Cpu0 : <|opcode|ra|rb|rc|cx|>
//=====//

class FA<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr,
        list<dag> pattern, InstrItinClass itin>:
    Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmA>
{
    bits<4>  ra;
    bits<4>  rb;
    bits<4>  rc;
    bits<12> imm12;

    let Opcode = op;

    let Inst{23-20} = ra;
    let Inst{19-16} = rb;
    let Inst{15-12} = rc;
    let Inst{11-0}  = imm12;
}

//=====//
```

```
// Format I instruction class in Cpu0 : </opcode/ra/rb/cx/>
//=====//

class FL<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
      InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>
{
  bits<4>  ra;
  bits<4>  rb;
  bits<16> imm16;

  let Opcode = op;

  let Inst{23-20} = ra;
  let Inst{19-16} = rb;
  let Inst{15-0}  = imm16;
}

//=====//
// Format J instruction class in Cpu0 : </opcode/address/>
//=====//

class FJ<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
      InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmJ>
{
  bits<24> addr;

  let Opcode = op;

  let Inst{23-0} = addr;
}
```

ADDiu is class ArithLogicI inherited from FL, can expand and get member value as follows,

```
def ADDiu    : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

/// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 2 register operands.
class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
      Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
  FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
    [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIALu> {
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
  }

So,
op = 0x09
instr_asm = "addiu"
OpNode = add
Od = simm16
imm_type = immSExt16
RC = CPURegs
```

Expand with FL further,

```
: FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
  !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
  [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIALu>

class FL<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
```



```

        InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>
{
    bits<4>  ra;
    bits<4>  rb;
    bits<16> imm16;

    let Opcode = op;

    let Inst{23-20} = ra;
    let Inst{19-16} = rb;
    let Inst{15-0}  = imm16;
}

```

```

So,
op = 0x09
outs = CPURegs:$ra
ins = CPURegs:$rb,simm16:$simm16
asmstr = "addiu\t$ra, $rb, $simm16"
pattern = [(set CPURegs:$ra, (add RC:$rb, immSExt16:$simm16))]
itin = IIALu

```

```

Members are,
ra = CPURegs:$ra
rb = CPURegs:$rb
imm16 = simm16:$simm16
Opcode = 0x09;
Inst{23-20} = CPURegs:$ra;
Inst{19-16} = CPURegs:$rb;
Inst{15-0}  = simm16:$simm16;

```

Expand with Cpu0Inst further,

```

class FL<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
        InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>

class Cpu0Inst<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
        InstrItinClass itin, Format f>: Instruction
{
    field bits<32> Inst;
    Format Form = f;

    let Namespace = "Cpu0";

    let Size = 4;

    bits<8> Opcode = 0;

    // Top 8 bits are the 'opcode' field
    let Inst{31-24} = Opcode;

    let OutOperandList = outs;
    let InOperandList  = ins;

    let AsmString      = asmstr;
    let Pattern        = pattern;
    let Itinerary       = itin;

    //

```

```
// Attributes specific to Cpu0 instructions...
//
bits<4> FormBits = Form.Value;

// TSFlags layout should be kept in sync with Cpu0InstrInfo.h.
let TSFlags{3-0} = FormBits;

let DecoderNamespace = "Cpu0";

field bits<32> SoftFail = 0;
}
```

```
So,
outs = CPURegs:$ra
ins = CPURegs:$rb,simm16:$imm16
asmstr = "addiu\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"
pattern = [(set CPURegs:$ra, (add RC:$rb, immSExt16:$imm16))]
itin = IIALu
f = FrmL
```

```
Members are,
Inst{31-24} = 0x09;
OutOperandList = CPURegs:$ra
InOperandList = CPURegs:$rb,simm16:$imm16
AsmString = "addiu\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"
Pattern = [(set CPURegs:$ra, (add RC:$rb, immSExt16:$imm16))]
Itinerary = IIALu
```

```
Summary with all members are,
// Inherited from parent like Instruction
Namespace = "Cpu0";
DecoderNamespace = "Cpu0";
Inst{31-24} = 0x08;
Inst{23-20} = CPURegs:$ra;
Inst{19-16} = CPURegs:$rb;
Inst{15-0} = simm16:$imm16;
OutOperandList = CPURegs:$ra
InOperandList = CPURegs:$rb,simm16:$imm16
AsmString = "addiu\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"
Pattern = [(set CPURegs:$ra, (add RC:$rb, immSExt16:$imm16))]
Itinerary = IIALu
// From Cpu0Inst
Opcode = 0x09;
// From FL
ra = CPURegs:$ra
rb = CPURegs:$rb
imm16 = simm16:$imm16
```

It's a lousy process. Similarly, LD and ST instruction definition can be expanded in this way. Please notify the Pattern = [(set CPURegs:\$ra, (add RC:\$rb, immSExt16:\$imm16))] which include keyword **"add"**. We will use it in DAG transformations later.

2.5 Write cmake file

Target/Cpu0 directory has two files CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt, contents as follows,

```

# CMakeLists.txt
# Our td all in Cpu0.td, Cpu0RegisterInfo.td and Cpu0InstrInfo.td included in
# Cpu0.td
set(LLVM_TARGET_DEFINITIONS Cpu0.td)

# Generate Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc and Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc which included by
# your hand code C++ files.
# Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc came from Cpu0RegisterInfo.td, Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc
# came from Cpu0InstrInfo.td.
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc -gen-register-info)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc -gen-instr-info)

# Used by llc
add_public_tablegen_target(Cpu0CommonTableGen)

# Cpu0CodeGen should match with LLVMBuild.txt Cpu0CodeGen
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen
    Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
)
# Should match with "subdirectories = MCTargetDesc TargetInfo" in LLVMBuild.txt
add_subdirectory(TargetInfo)
add_subdirectory(MCTargetDesc)

CMakeLists.txt is the make information for cmake, # is comment.

;===- ./lib/Target/Cpu0/LLVMBuild.txt -----*- Conf -*====;
;
;           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
;=====;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;   http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
;=====;

# Following comments extracted from http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html

[common]
subdirectories =  MCTargetDesc TargetInfo

[component_0]
# TargetGroup components are an extension of LibraryGroups, specifically for
# defining LLVM targets (which are handled specially in a few places).
type = TargetGroup
# The name of the component should always be the name of the target. (should
# match "def Cpu0 : Target" in Cpu0.td)
name = Cpu0
# Cpu0 component is located in directory Target/
parent = Target
# Whether this target defines an assembly parser, assembly printer, disassembler
# , and supports JIT compilation. They are optional.

```

```
#has_asmparser = 1
#has_asmprinter = 1
#has_disassembler = 1
#has_jit = 1

[component_1]
# component_1 is a Library type and name is Cpu0CodeGen. After build it will in
# lib/libLLVMCpu0CodeGen.a of your build command directory.
type = Library
name = Cpu0CodeGen
# Cpu0CodeGen component(Library) is located in directory Cpu0/
parent = Cpu0
# If given, a list of the names of Library or LibraryGroup components which must
# also be linked in whenever this library is used. That is, the link time
# dependencies for this component. When tools are built, the build system will
# include the transitive closure of all required_libraries for the components
# the tool needs.
required_libraries = CodeGen Core MC Cpu0Desc Cpu0Info SelectionDAG Support Target
# All LLVMBuild.txt in Target/Cpu0 and subdirectory use 'add_to_library_groups =
# Cpu0'
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

LLVMBuild.txt files are written in a simple variant of the INI or configuration file format. Comments are prefixed by # in both files. We explain the setting for these 2 files in comments. Please spend a little time to read it.

Both CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt coexist in sub-directories MCTargetDesc and TargetInfo. Their contents indicate they will generate Cpu0Desc and Cpu0Info libraries. After building, you will find three libraries: libLLVMCpu0CodeGen.a, libLLVMCpu0Desc.a and libLLVMCpu0Info.a in lib/ of your build directory. For more details please see “Building LLVM with CMake”⁵ and “LLVMBuild Guide”⁶.

2.6 Target Registration

You must also register your target with the TargetRegistry, which is what other LLVM tools use to be able to lookup and use your target at runtime. The TargetRegistry can be used directly, but for most targets there are helper templates which should take care of the work for you.

All targets should declare a global Target object which is used to represent the target during registration. Then, in the target’s TargetInfo library, the target should define that object and use the RegisterTarget template to register the target. For example, the file TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp register TheCpu0Target for big endian and TheCpu0elTarget for little endian, as follows.

```
// TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp
...
Target llvm::TheCpu0Target, llvm::TheCpu0elTarget;
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo() {
    RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0,
        /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheCpu0Target, "cpu0", "Cpu0");

    RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0el,
        /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheCpu0elTarget, "cpu0el", "Cpu0el");
}
```

Files Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp and MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp just define the empty initialize function since we register nothing in them for this moment.

⁵ <http://llvm.org/docs/CMake.html>

⁶ <http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html>

```
//====- Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp - Define TargetMachine for Cpu0 -====//
...

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0Target() {
}
...

//====- Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp - Cpu0 Target Descriptions -====//
...
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {
}

```

Please see “Target Registration”⁷ for reference.

2.7 Build libraries and td

The llvm3.1 source code is put in /usr/local/llvm/3.1/src and have llvm3.1 release-build in /usr/local/llvm/3.1/configure_release_build. About how to build llvm, please refer⁸. We made a copy from /usr/local/llvm/3.1/src to /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src for working with my Cpu0 target back end. Sub-directories src is for source code and cmake_debug_build is for debug build directory.

Except directory src/lib/Target/Cpu0, there are a couple of files modified to support cpu0 new Target. Please check files in src_files_modify/src/. You can search cpu0 without case sensitive to find the modified files by command,

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ grep -R -i "cpu0" ../src/
../src/CMakeLists.txt: Cpu0
../src/lib/Target/LLVMBuild.txt:subdirectories = ARM CellSPU CppBackend Hexagon
MBlaze MSP430 Mips Cpu0 PTX PowerPC Sparc X86 XCore ../src/lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:
case VK_Cpu0_GPREL: return "GPREL";
...
../src/lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp: case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TLSD:
...
../src/lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp: // AT_language, a 4 byte value. We use DW_LANG_Cpu0
_Assembler as the dwarf2
../src/lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp: // MCOS->EmitIntValue(dwarf::DW_LANG_Cpu0_Assembler,
2);
../src/lib/Support/Triple.cpp: case cpu0: return "cpu0";
...
../src/include/llvm/Support/ELF.h: EM_LATTICEMICO32 = 138, // RISC processor fo
r Lattice CPU0 architecture
...

```

You can update your llvm working copy by,

```
cp -rf LLVMBackendTutorial/src_files_modified/src/* yourllvm/workingcopy/sourc
edir/.
```

Now, run the cmake and make command to build td (the following cmake command is for my setting),

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++ -DCMAKE_
C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -G "Unix Makefiles" ../src/

-- Targeting Cpu0
...
-- Targeting XCore

```

⁷ <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBackend.html#target-registration>

⁸ http://clang.llvm.org/get_started.html

```
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug
_build
```

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ make
```

```
...
```

```
[100%] Built target gtest_main
```

After build, you can type command `llc -version` to find the `cpu0` backend,

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug
_build/bin/llc --version
```

```
LLVM (http://llvm.org/):
```

```
  LLVM version 3.1svn
```

```
  DEBUG build with assertions.
```

```
  Built Sep 21 2012 (18:27:58).
```

```
  Default target: x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu
```

```
  Host CPU: penryn
```

```
Registered Targets:
```

```
  arm      - ARM
```

```
  cellspu  - STI CBEA Cell SPU [experimental]
```

```
  cpp      - C++ backend
```

```
  cpu0     - Cpu0
```

```
  cpu0el   - Cpu0el
```

```
...
```

The `llc -version` can display “`cpu0`” and “`cpu0el`” message, because the following code from file `Target-Info/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp` what in “section Target Registration”⁹ we made. List them as follows again,

```
// Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp
```

```
Target llvm::TheCpu0Target, llvm::TheCpu0elTarget;
```

```
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo() {
```

```
  RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0,
```

```
    /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheCpu0Target, "cpu0", "Cpu0");
```

```
  RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0el,
```

```
    /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheCpu0elTarget, "cpu0el", "Cpu0el");
```

```
}
```

Now try to do `llc` command to compile input file `ch3.cpp` as follows,

```
// ch3.cpp
```

```
int main()
```

```
{
```

```
  return 0;
```

```
}
```

First step, compile it with `clang` and get output `ch3.bc` as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ clang -c ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
```

Next step, transfer bitcode `.bc` to human readable text format as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ llvm-dis ch3.bc -o ch3.ll
```

⁹ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

```
// ch3.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch3.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:64-f32:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32:64-S128"
target triple = "x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu"

define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    ret i32 0
}
```

Now, compile ch3.bc into ch3.cpu0.s, we get the error message as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
llc: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/tools/llc/llc.cpp:456: int main(int, char **): Assertion 'target.get() && "Could not allocate target machine!"' failed.
Stack dump:
0.      Program arguments: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
Aborted (core dumped)
```

Currently we just define target td files (Cpu0.td, Cpu0RegisterInfo.td, ...). According to LLVM structure, we need to define our target machine and include those td related files. The error message say we didn't define our target machine.

BACK END STRUCTURE

This chapter introduces the back end class inheritance tree and class members first. Next, following the back end structure, adding individual class implementation in each section. There are compiler knowledge like DAG (Directed-Acyclic-Graph) and instruction selection needed in this chapter. This chapter explains these knowledge just when needed. At the end of this chapter, we will have a back end to compile LLVM intermediate code into CPU0 assembly code.

Many code are added in this chapter. They almost are common in every back end except the back end name (CPU0 or MIPS ...). Actually, we copy almost all the code from MIPS and replace the name with CPU0. Please focus on the classes relationship in this backend structure. Once knowing the structure, you can create your backend structure as quickly as we did, even though there are 3000 lines of code in this chapter.

3.1 TargetMachine structure

Your back end should define a TargetMachine class, for example, we define the Cpu0TargetMachine class. Cpu0TargetMachine class contains its own instruction class, frame/stack class, DAG (Directed-Acyclic-Graph) class, and register class. The Cpu0TargetMachine contents as follows,

```
// - TargetMachine.h
class TargetMachine {
    TargetMachine(const TargetMachine &);    // DO NOT IMPLEMENT
    void operator=(const TargetMachine &);  // DO NOT IMPLEMENT

public:
    // Interfaces to the major aspects of target machine information:
    // -- Instruction opcode and operand information
    // -- Pipelines and scheduling information
    // -- Stack frame information
    // -- Selection DAG lowering information
    //
    virtual const TargetInstrInfo      *getInstrInfo() const { return 0; }
    virtual const TargetFrameLowering *getFrameLowering() const { return 0; }
    virtual const TargetLowering      *getTargetLowering() const { return 0; }
    virtual const TargetSelectionDAGInfo *getSelectionDAGInfo() const { return 0; }
    virtual const TargetData           *getTargetData() const { return 0; }
    ...
    /// getSubtarget - This method returns a pointer to the specified type of
    /// TargetSubtargetInfo. In debug builds, it verifies that the object being
    /// returned is of the correct type.
    template<typename STC> const STC &getSubtarget() const {
        return *static_cast<const STC*>(getSubtargetImpl());
    }
}
```

```
}

// - TargetMachine.h
class LLVMTargetMachine : public TargetMachine {
protected: // Can only create subclasses.
    LLVMTargetMachine(const Target &T,StringRef TargetTriple,
                      StringRef CPU, StringRef FS, TargetOptions Options,
                      Reloc::Model RM, CodeModel::Model CM,
                      CodeGenOpt::Level OL);
    ...
};

class Cpu0TargetMachine : public LLVMTargetMachine {
    Cpu0Subtarget      Subtarget;
    const TargetData    DataLayout; // Calculates type size & alignment
    Cpu0InstrInfo       InstrInfo;   // - Instructions
    Cpu0FrameLowering   FrameLowering; // - Stack(Frame) and Stack direction
    Cpu0TargetLowering  TLInfo;       // - Stack(Frame) and Stack direction
    Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo TSInfo;      // - Map .bc DAG to backend DAG
public:
    virtual const Cpu0InstrInfo *getInstrInfo() const
    { return &InstrInfo; }
    virtual const TargetFrameLowering *getFrameLowering() const
    { return &FrameLowering; }
    virtual const Cpu0Subtarget *getSubtargetImpl() const
    { return &Subtarget; }
    virtual const TargetData *getTargetData() const
    { return &DataLayout; }
    virtual const Cpu0TargetLowering *getTargetLowering() const {
        return &TLInfo;
    }

    virtual const Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo* getSelectionDAGInfo() const {
        return &TSInfo;
    }
};

// - TargetInstrInfo.h
class TargetInstrInfo : public MCInstrInfo {
    TargetInstrInfo(const TargetInstrInfo &); // DO NOT IMPLEMENT
    void operator=(const TargetInstrInfo &); // DO NOT IMPLEMENT
public:
    ...
}

// - TargetInstrInfo.h
class TargetInstrInfoImpl : public TargetInstrInfo {
protected:
    TargetInstrInfoImpl(int CallFrameSetupOpcode = -1,
                       int CallFrameDestroyOpcode = -1)
        : TargetInstrInfo(CallFrameSetupOpcode, CallFrameDestroyOpcode) {}
public:
    ...
}

// - Cpu0GenInstInfo.inc which generate from Cpu0InstrInfo.td
#ifdef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#undef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
```

```

namespace llvm {
struct Cpu0GenInstrInfo : public TargetInstrInfoImpl {
    explicit Cpu0GenInstrInfo(int SO = -1, int DO = -1);
};
} // End llvm namespace
#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER

#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"
// - Cpu0InstrInfo.h
class Cpu0InstrInfo : public Cpu0GenInstrInfo {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM;
public:
    explicit Cpu0InstrInfo(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);
};

```

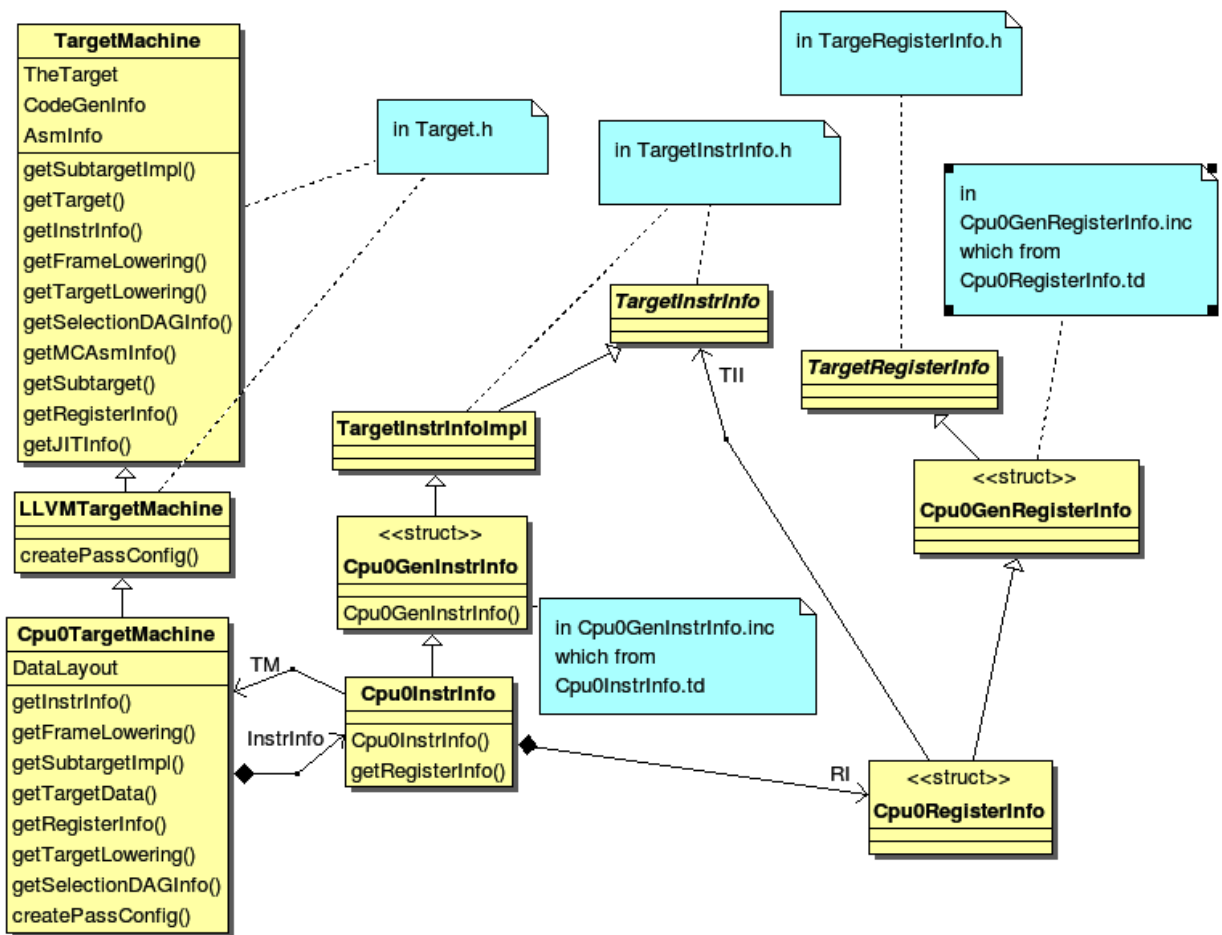


Figure 3.1: TargetMachine class diagram 1

The Cpu0TargetMachine inherit tree is TargetMachine <- LLVMTargetMachine <- Cpu0TargetMachine. Cpu0TargetMachine has class Cpu0Subtarget, Cpu0InstrInfo, Cpu0FrameLowering, Cpu0TargetLowering and Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo. Class Cpu0Subtarget, Cpu0InstrInfo, Cpu0FrameLowering, Cpu0TargetLowering and Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo are inherited from parent class TargetSubtargetInfo, TargetInstrInfo, TargetFrameLowering, TargetLowering and TargetSelectionDAGInfo.

TargetMachine class diagram 1 shows Cpu0TargetMachine inherit tree and it's Cpu0InstrInfo class inherit tree.

Cpu0TargetMachine contains Cpu0InstrInfo and ... other class. Cpu0InstrInfo contains Cpu0RegisterInfo class, RI. Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0RegisterInfo.td will generate Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc and Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc which contain some member functions implementation for class Cpu0InstrInfo and Cpu0RegisterInfo.

TargetMachine class diagram 2 as below shows Cpu0TargetMachine contains class TSInfo: Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo, FrameLowering: Cpu0FrameLowering, Subtarget: Cpu0Subtarget and TLInfo: Cpu0TargetLowering.

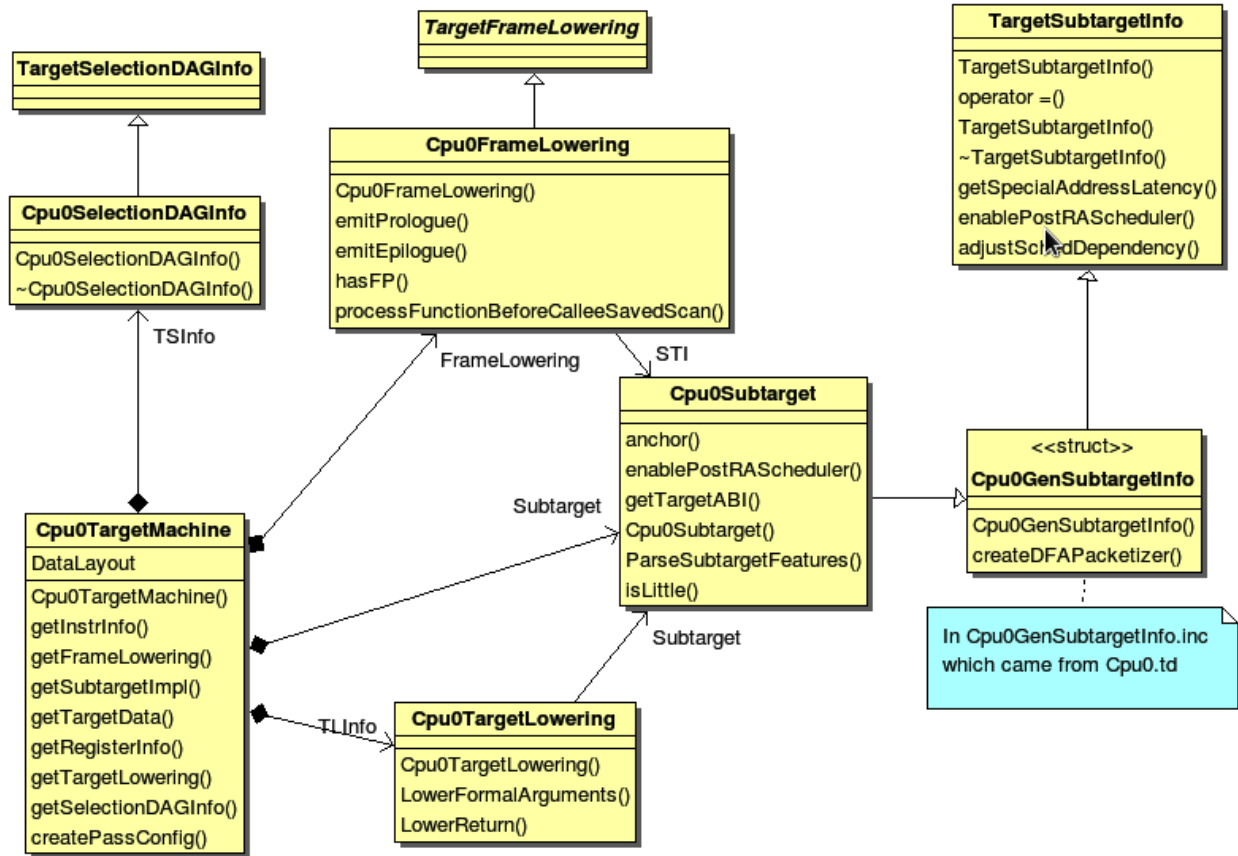


Figure 3.2: TargetMachine class diagram 2

TargetMachine members and operators shows some members and operators (member function) of the parent class TargetMachine's. *Other class members and operators* as below shows some members of class InstrInfo, RegisterInfo and TargetLowering. Class DAGInfo is skipped here.

Benefit from the inherit tree structure, we just need to implement few code in instruction, frame/stack, select DAG class. Many code implemented by their parent class. The llvm-tblgen generate Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc from Cpu0InstrInfo.td. Cpu0InstrInfo.h extract those code it need from Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc by define “#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER”. Following is the code fragment from Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc. Code between “#if def GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER” and “#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER” will be extracted by Cpu0InstrInfo.h.

```

// - Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc which generate from Cpu0InstrInfo.td
#ifdef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#undef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
namespace llvm {
struct Cpu0GenInstrInfo : public TargetInstrInfoImpl {
    explicit Cpu0GenInstrInfo(int SO = -1, int DO = -1);
};
} // End llvm namespace

```

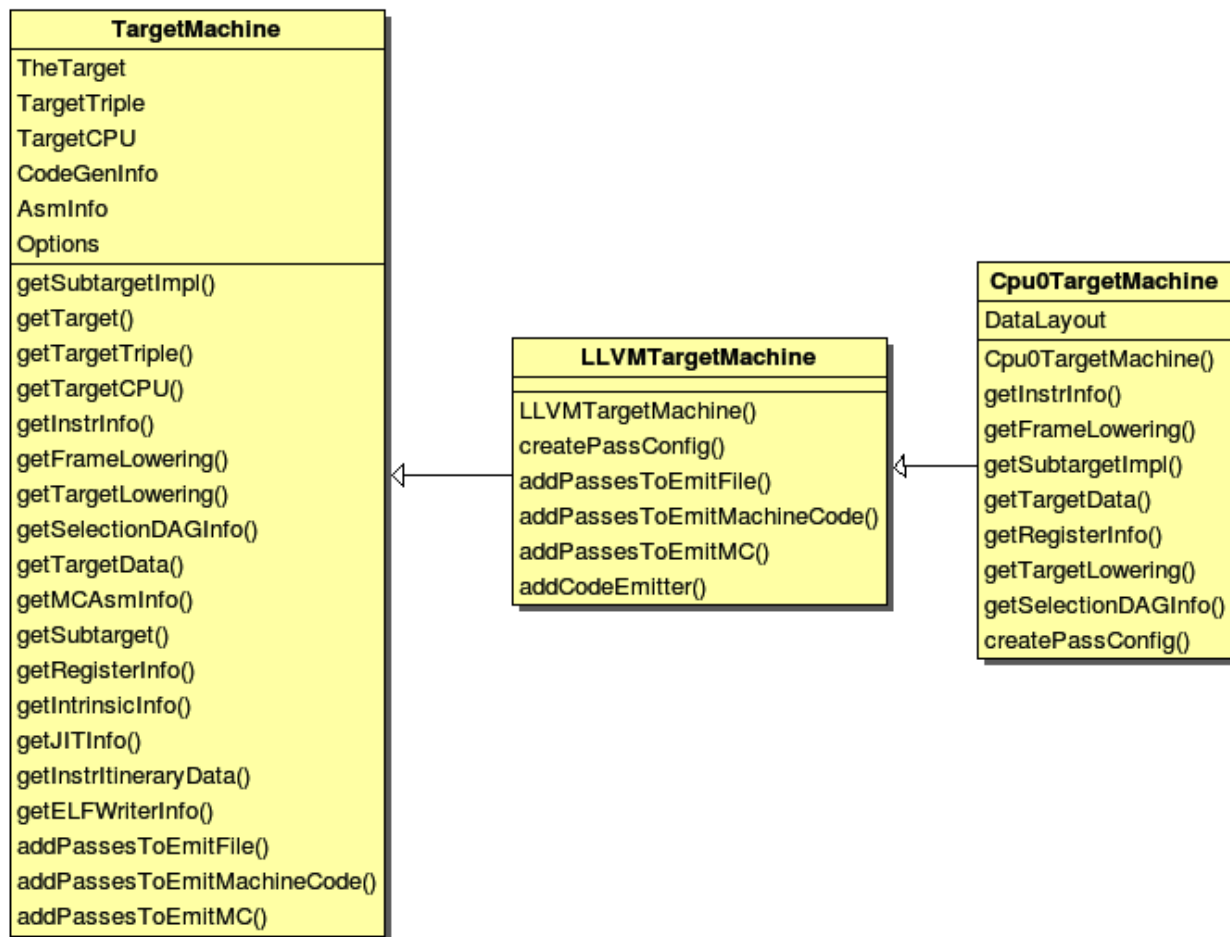


Figure 3.3: TargetMachine members and operators

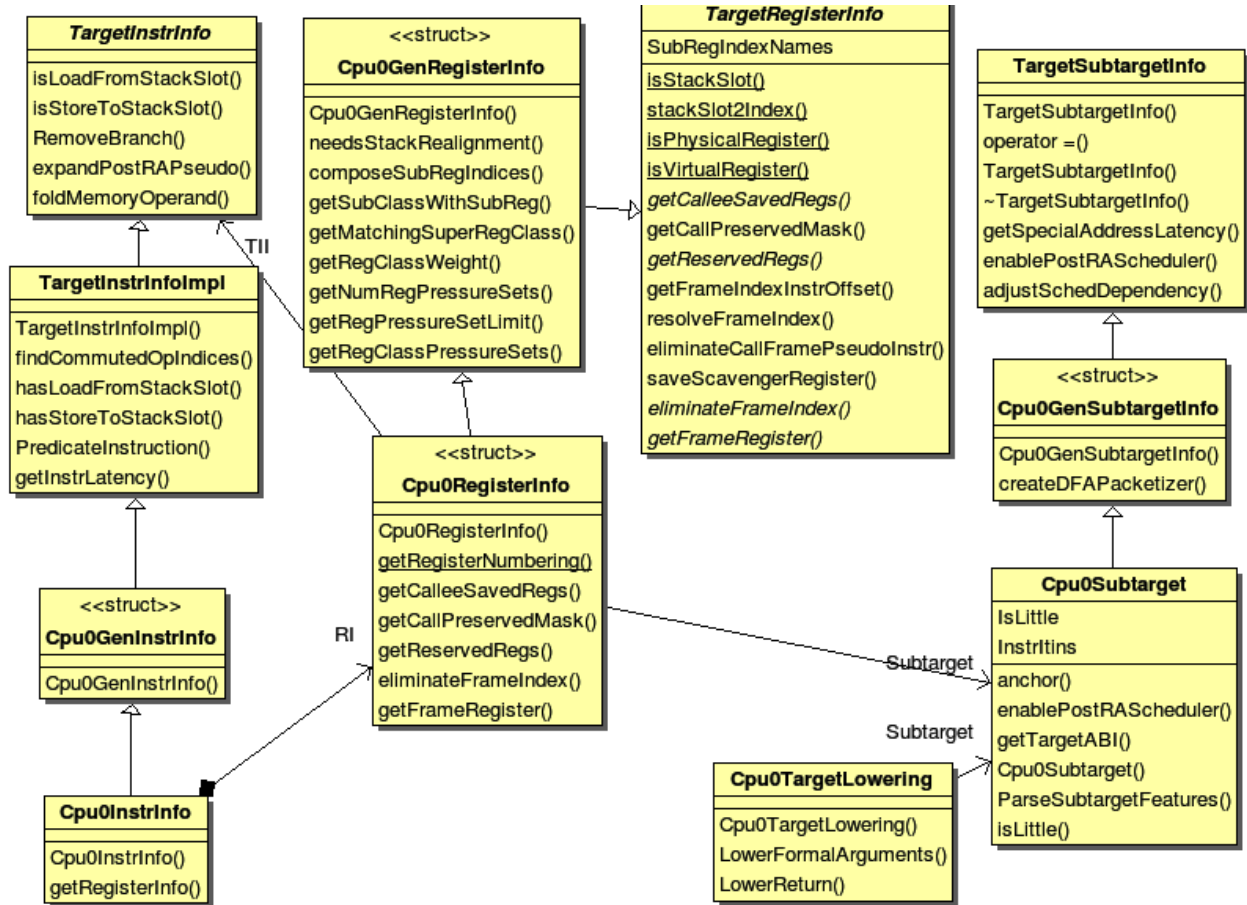


Figure 3.4: Other class members and operators

```
#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
```

Reference Write An LLVM Backend web site ¹.

Now, the code in 3/1/Cpu0 add class Cpu0TargetMachine(Cpu0TargetMachine.h and cpp), Cpu0Subtarget (Cpu0Subtarget.h and .cpp), Cpu0InstrInfo (Cpu0InstrInfo.h and .cpp), Cpu0FrameLowering (Cpu0FrameLowering.h and .cpp), Cpu0TargetLowering (Cpu0ISelLowering.h and .cpp) and Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo (Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo.h and .cpp). CMakeLists.txt modified with those new added *.cpp as follows,

```
# CMakeLists.txt
...
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen
  Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
  Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
  Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp
  Cpu0Subtarget.cpp
  Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
  Cpu0SelectionDAGInfo.cpp
)
```

Please take a look for 3/1 code. After that, building 3/1 by make as chapter 2 (of course, you should remove old Target/Cpu0 and replace with 3/1/Cpu0). You can remove lib/Target/Cpu0/*.inc before do “make” to ensure your code rebuild completely. By remove *.inc, all files those have included .inc will be rebuild, then your Target library will regenerate. Command as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ rm -rf lib/Target/Cpu0/*
```

3.2 Add RegisterInfo

As depicted in *TargetMachine class diagram 1*, the Cpu0InstrInfo class should contains Cpu0RegisterInfo. So 3/2/Cpu0 add Cpu0RegisterInfo class (Cpu0RegisterInfo.h, Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp), and Cpu0RegisterInfo class in files Cpu0InstrInfo.h, Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp, Cpu0TargetMachine.h, and modify CMakeLists.txt as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.h
class Cpu0InstrInfo : public Cpu0GenInstrInfo {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM;
    const Cpu0RegisterInfo RI;
public:
    explicit Cpu0InstrInfo(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);

    /// getRegisterInfo - TargetInstrInfo is a superset of MRegister info. As
    /// such, whenever a client has an instance of instruction info, it should
    /// always be able to get register info as well (through this method).
    ///
    virtual const Cpu0RegisterInfo &getRegisterInfo() const;

public:
};

// Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
Cpu0InstrInfo::Cpu0InstrInfo(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm)
:
    TM(tm),
    RI(*TM.getSubtargetImpl(), *this) {}
```

¹ <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBackend.html#TargetMachine>

```
const Cpu0RegisterInfo &Cpu0InstrInfo::getRegisterInfo() const {
    return RI;
}

// Cpu0TargetMachine.h
virtual const Cpu0RegisterInfo *getRegisterInfo() const {
    return &InstrInfo.getRegisterInfo();
}

# CMakeLists.txt
...
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen
    ...
    Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp
    ...
)
```

Now, let's replace 3/1/Cpu0 with 3/2/Cpu0 of adding register class definition and rebuild. After that, let's try to run the llc compile command to see what happen,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
llc: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/CodeGen/LLVMTargetMachine.cpp:78: l
lvm::LLVMTargetMachine::LLVMTargetMachine(const llvm::Target &, llvm::StringRef,
llvm::StringRef, llvm::StringRef, llvm::TargetOptions, Reloc::Model, CodeModel:
:Model, CodeGenOpt::Level): Assertion 'AsmInfo && "MCAsmInfo not initialized."
"Make sure you include the correct TargetSelect.h" "and that InitializeAllTarge
tMCs() is being invoked!"' failed.
Stack dump:
0. Program arguments: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
Aborted (core dumped)
```

The errors say that we have not Target AsmPrinter. Let's add it in next section.

3.3 Add AsmPrinter

3/3/cpu0 contains the Cpu0AsmPrinter definition. First, we add definitions in Cpu0.td to support AssemblyWriter. Cpu0.td is added with the following fragment,

```
// Cpu0.td
//...
//=====//
// Cpu0 processors supported.
//=====//

class Proc<string Name, list<SubtargetFeature> Features>
  : Processor<Name, Cpu0GenericItineraries, Features>;

def : Proc<"cpu032", [FeatureCpu032]>;

def Cpu0AsmWriter : AsmWriter {
  string AsmWriterClassName = "InstPrinter";
  bit isMCAsmWriter = 1;
}
```



```
// Will generate Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc included by Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp, contents
// as follows,
// void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInstruction(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O)
// {...}
// const char *Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(unsigned RegNo) {...}
def Cpu0 : Target {
  // def Cpu0InstrInfo : InstrInfo as before.
  let InstructionSet = Cpu0InstrInfo;
  let AssemblyWriters = [Cpu0AsmWriter];
}
```

As comments indicate, it will generate Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc which is included by Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp. Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc has the implementation of Cpu0InstPrinter::printInstruction() and Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(). Both of these functions can be auto-generated from the information we defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0RegisterInfo.td. To let these two functions work in our code, the only thing need to do is add a class Cpu0InstPrinter and include them.

File 3/3/Cpu0/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp include Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc and call the auto-generated functions as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp
#include "Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc"

void Cpu0InstPrinter::printRegName(raw_ostream &OS, unsigned RegNo) const {
  // - getRegisterName(RegNo) defined in Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc which came from
  // - Cpu0.td indicate.
  OS << '$' << StringRef(getRegisterName(RegNo)).lower();
}

void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInst(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O,
                               StringRef Annot) {
  // - printInstruction(MI, O) defined in Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc which came from
  // - Cpu0.td indicate.
  printInstruction(MI, O);
  printAnnotation(O, Annot);
}
```

Next, add Cpu0AsmPrinter (Cpu0AsmPrinter.h, Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp), Cpu0MCInstLower (Cpu0MCInstLower.h, Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp), Cpu0BaseInfo.h, Cpu0FixupKinds.h and Cpu0MCAsmInfo (Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h, Cpu0MCAsmInfo.cpp) in sub-directory MCTargetDesc.

Finally, add code in Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp to register Cpu0InstPrinter as follows,

```
// Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp
static MCAsmInfo *createCpu0MCAsmInfo(const Target &T, StringRef TT) {
  MCAsmInfo *MAI = new Cpu0MCAsmInfo(T, TT);

  MachineLocation Dst(MachineLocation::VirtualFP);
  MachineLocation Src(Cpu0::SP, 0);
  MAI->addInitialFrameState(0, Dst, Src);

  return MAI;
}

static MCInstPrinter *createCpu0MCInstPrinter(const Target &T,
                                              unsigned SyntaxVariant,
                                              const MCAsmInfo &MAI,
                                              const MCInstrInfo &MII,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
```

```

                                const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) {
    return new Cpu0InstPrinter(MAI, MII, MRI);
}

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {
    // Register the MC asm info.
    RegisterMCAsmInfoFn X(TheCpu0Target, createCpu0MCAsmInfo);
    RegisterMCAsmInfoFn Y(TheCpu0elTarget, createCpu0MCAsmInfo);

    // Register the MCInstPrinter.
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstPrinter(TheCpu0Target,
                                           createCpu0MCInstPrinter);
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstPrinter(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                           createCpu0MCInstPrinter);
}

```

Now, it's time to work with `AsmPrinter`. According section “section Target Registration”², we can register our `AsmPrinter` when we need it as follows,

```

// Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp
// Force static initialization.
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0AsmPrinter() {
    RegisterAsmPrinter<Cpu0AsmPrinter> X(TheCpu0Target);
    RegisterAsmPrinter<Cpu0AsmPrinter> Y(TheCpu0elTarget);
}

```

The dynamic register mechanism is a good idea, right.

Except add the new .cpp files to `CMakeLists.txt`, please remember to add subdirectory `InstPrinter`, enable `asmprinter`, add libraries `AsmPrinter` and `Cpu0AsmPrinter` to `LLVMBuild.txt` as follows,

```

// LLVMBuild.txt
[common]
subdirectories = InstPrinter MCTargetDesc TargetInfo

[component_0]
...
# Please enable asmprinter
has_asmprinter = 1
...

[component_1]
# Add AsmPrinter Cpu0AsmPrinter
required_libraries = AsmPrinter CodeGen Core MC Cpu0AsmPrinter Cpu0Desc Cpu0Info

```

Now, run `3/3/Cpu0` for `AsmPrinter` support, will get error message as follows,

```

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
/usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc: target does not support
generation of this file type!

```

The `llc` fails to compile IR code into machine code since we didn't implement class `Cpu0DAGToDAGISel`. Before the implementation, we will introduce the LLVM Code Generation Sequence, DAG, and LLVM instruction selection in next 3 sections.

² <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

3.4 LLVM Code Generation Sequence

Following diagram came from `tricore_llvm.pdf`.

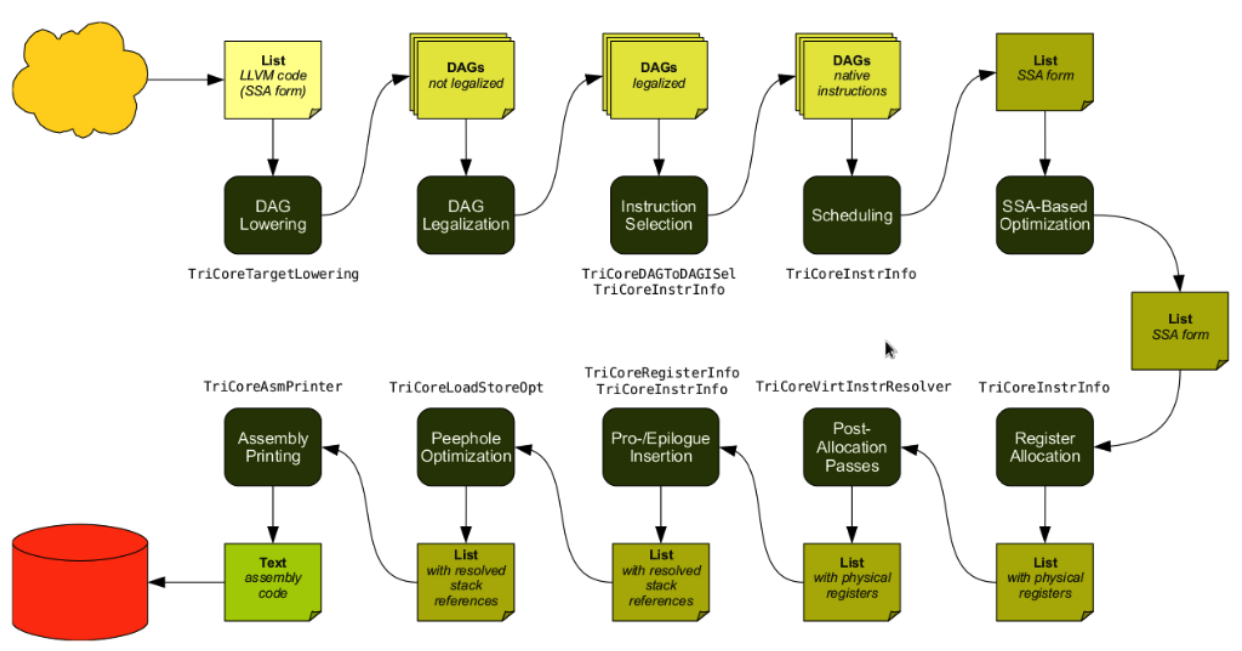


Figure 3.5: `tricore_llvm.pdf`: Code generation sequence. On the path from LLVM code to assembly code, numerous passes are run through and several data structures are used to represent the intermediate results.

LLVM is a Static Single Assignment (SSA) based representation. LLVM provides an infinite virtual registers which can hold values of primitive type (integral, floating point, or pointer values). So, every operand can save in different virtual register in llvm SSA representation. Comment is “;” in llvm representation. Following is the llvm SSA instructions.

```
store i32 0, i32* %a ; store i32 type of 0 to virtual register %a, %a is
                        ; pointer type which point to i32 value
store i32 %b, i32* %c ; store %b contents to %c point to, %b isi32 type virtual
                        ; register, %c is pointer type which point to i32 value.
%a1 = load i32* %a    ; load the memory value where %a point to and assign the
                        ; memory value to %a1
%a3 = add i32 %a2, 1  ; add %a2 and 1 and save to %a3
```

We explain the code generation process as below. If you don't feel comfortable, please check `tricore_llvm.pdf` section 4.2 first. You can read “The LLVM Target-Independent Code Generator” from ³ and “LLVM Language Reference Manual” from ⁴ before go ahead, but we think read section 4.2 of `tricore_llvm.pdf` is enough. We suggest you read the web site documents as above only when you are still not quite understand, even though you have read this section and next 2 sections article for DAG and Instruction Selection.

1. Instruction Selection

```
// In this stage, transfer the llvm opcode into machine opcode, but the operand
// still is llvm virtual operand.
store i16 0, i16* %a // store 0 of i16 type to where virtual register %a
```

³ <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html>

⁴ <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html>

```
                                // point to
=> addiu i16 0, i32* %a
```

2. Scheduling and Formation

```
// In this stage, reorder the instructions sequence for optimization in
// instructions cycle or in register pressure.
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5 // st %a to *(%b+5)
    st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    %d = ld i32* %c

// Transfer above instructions order as follows. In RISC like Mips the ld %c use
// the previous instruction st %c, must wait more than 1
// cycles. Meaning the ld cannot follow st immediately.
=> st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5
    %d = ld i32* %c, i16 0

// If without reorder instructions, a instruction nop which do nothing must be
// filled, contribute one instruction cycle more than optimization. (Actually,
// Mips is scheduled with hardware dynamically and will insert nop between st
// and ld instructions if compiler didn't insert nop.)
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5
    st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    nop
    %d = ld i32* %c, i16 0

// Minimum register pressure
// Suppose %c is alive after the instructions basic block (meaning %c will be
// used after the basic block), %a and %b are not alive after that.
// The following no reorder version need 3 registers at least
    %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 1
    st %b, i32* %c, 2

// The reorder version need 2 registers only (by allocate %a and %b in the same
// register)
=> %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 1
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %b, i32* %c, 2
```

3. SSA-based Machine Code Optimization

For example, common expression remove, shown in next section DAG.

4. Register Allocation

Allocate real register for virtual register.

5. Prologue/Epilogue Code Insertion

Explain in section Add Prologue/Epilogue functions

6. Late Machine Code Optimizations

Any “last-minute” peephole optimizations of the final machine code can be applied during this phase.

For example, replace $x = x * 2$ by $x = x < 1$ for integer operand.

7. Code Emission

Finally, the completed machine code is emitted. For static compilation, the end result is an assembly code file; for JIT compilation, the opcodes of the machine instructions are written into memory.

3.5 DAG (Directed Acyclic Graph)

Many important techniques for local optimization begin by transforming a basic block into DAG. For example, the basic block code and its corresponding DAG as *DAG example*.

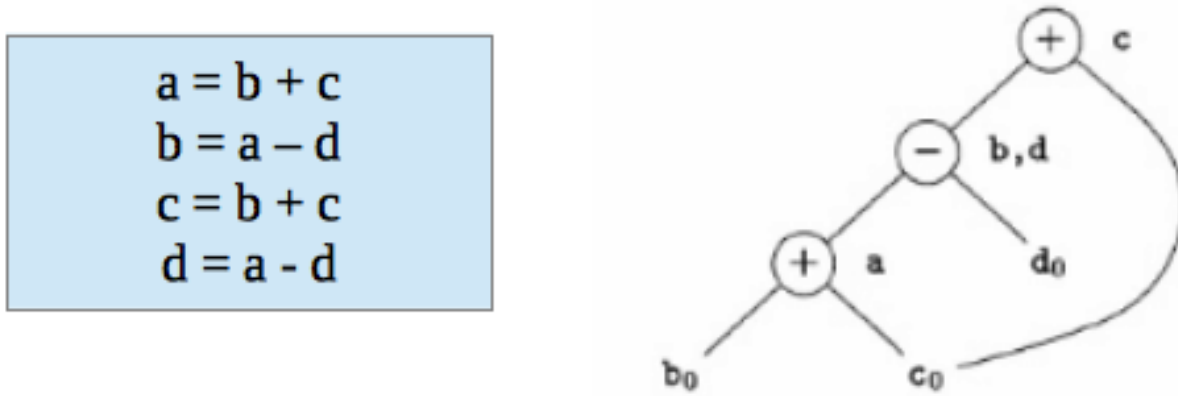


Figure 3.6: DAG example

If *b* is not live on exit from the block, then we can do common expression remove to get the following code.

```
a = b + c
d = a - d
c = d + c
```

As you can imagine, the common expression remove can apply in IR or machine code.

DAG like a tree which opcode is the node and operand (register and const/immediate/offset) is leaf. It can also be represented by list as prefix order in tree. For example, (+ b, c), (+ b, 1) is IR DAG representation.

3.6 Instruction Selection

In back end, we need to translate IR code into machine code at Instruction Selection Process as *IR and its corresponding machine instruction*.

MOV	$r_d = r_s$	ADDI	$r_d = r_s + 0$
MOV	$r_d = r_s$	ADD	$r_d = r_{s1} + r_0$
MOVI	$r_d = c$	ADDI	$r_d = r_0 + c$

Figure 3.7: IR and its corresponding machine instruction

For machine instruction selection, the better solution is represent IR and machine instruction by DAG. In *IR and*

it's *corresponding machine instruction*, we skip the register leaf. The $r_j + r_k$ is IR DAG representation (for symbol notation, not llvm SSA form). ADD is machine instruction.

Instruction Tree Patterns

Name	Effect	Trees
—	r_i	TEMP
ADD	$r_i \quad r_j + r_k$	
MUL	$r_i \quad r_j \times r_k$	
SUB	$r_i \quad r_j - r_k$	
DIV	$r_i \quad r_j / r_k$	
ADDI	$r_i \quad r_j + c$	
SUBI	$r_i \quad r_j - c$	
LOAD	$r_i \quad M[r_j + c]$	

Figure 3.8: Instruction DAG representation

The IR DAG and machine instruction DAG can also be represented as list. For example, $(+ \text{ ri, rj})$, $(- \text{ ri, 1})$ are lists for IR DAG; (ADD ri, rj) , (SUBI ri, 1) are lists for machine instruction DAG.

Now, let's recall the ADDiu instruction defined on Cpu0InstrInfo.td in the previous chapter. And it will expand to the following Pattern as mentioned in section Write td (Target Description) of the previous chapter as follows,

```
def ADDiu : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

Pattern = [(set CPURegs:$ra, (add RC:$rb, immSExt16:$simm16))]
```

This pattern means the IR DAG node **add** can translate into machine instruction DAG node ADDiu by pattern match mechanism. Similarly, the machine instruction DAG node LD and ST can be got from IR DAG node **load** and **store**.

Some cpu/fpu (floating point processor) has multiply-and-add floating point instruction, **fmadd**. It can be represented by DAG list $(\text{fadd} (\text{fmul ra, rc}), \text{rb})$. For this implementation, we can assign **fmadd** DAG pattern to instruction td as follows,

```
def FMADDS : AForm_1<59, 29,
    (ops F4RC:$FRT, F4RC:$FRA, F4RC:$FRC, F4RC:$FRB),
    "fmadds $FRT, $FRA, $FRC, $FRB",
    [(set F4RC:$FRT, (fadd (fmul F4RC:$FRA, F4RC:$FRC),
        F4RC:$FRB))] >;
```

Similar with ADDiu, $[(\text{set F4RC}:\$FRT, (\text{fadd} (\text{fmul F4RC}:\$FRA, \text{F4RC}:\$FRC), \text{F4RC}:\$FRB))]$ is the pattern which includes node **fmul** and node **fadd**.

Now, for the following basic block notation IR and llvm SSA IR code,

```

d = a * c
e = d + b
...

%d = fmul %a, %c
%e = fadd %d, %b
...
```

The llvm SelectionDAG Optimization Phase (is part of Instruction Selection Process) preferred to translate this 2 IR DAG node (fmul %a, %b) (fadd %d, %c) into one machine instruction DAG node (**fmadd** %a, %c, %b), than translate them into 2 machine instruction nodes **fmul** and **fadd**.

```

%e = fmadd %a, %c, %b
...
```

As you can see, the IR notation representation is easier to read then llvm SSA IR form. So, we use the notation form in this book sometimes.

For the following basic block code,

```

a = b + c           // in notation IR form
d = a - d
%e = fmadd %a, %c, %b      // in llvm SSA IR form
```

We can apply *IR and it's corresponding machine instruction* Instruction tree pattern to get the following machine code,

```

load      rb, M(sp+8); // assume b allocate in sp+8, sp is stack point register
load      rc, M(sp+16);
add       ra, rb, rc;
load      rd, M(sp+24);
sub       rd, ra, rd;
fmadd     re, ra, rc, rb;
```

3.7 Add Cpu0DAGToDAGISel class

The IR DAG to machine instruction DAG transformation is introduced in the previous section. Now, let's check what IR DAG node the file ch3.bc has. List ch3.ll as follows,

```

// ch3.ll
define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
%1 = alloca i32, align 4
store i32 0, i32* %1
ret i32 0
}
```

As above, ch3.ll use the IR DAG node **store**, **ret**. Actually, it also use **add** for sp (stack point) register adjust. So, the definitions in Cpu0InstInfo.td as follows is enough. IR DAG is defined in file include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td.

```

/// Load and Store Instructions
/// aligned
defm LD      : LoadM32<0x00, "ld",  load_a>;
defm ST      : StoreM32<0x01, "st",  store_a>;

/// Arithmetic Instructions (ALU Immediate)
//def LDI     : MoveImm<0x08, "ldi", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
// add defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).
```

```
def ADDiu    : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

let isReturn=1, isTerminator=1, hasDelaySlot=1, isCodeGenOnly=1,
    isBarrier=1, hasCtrlDep=1 in
  def RET : FJ <0x2C, (outs), (ins CPURegs:$target),
      "ret\t$t$target", [(Cpu0Ret CPURegs:$target)], IIBranch>;
```

Add class Cpu0DAGToDAGISel (Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp) to CMakeLists.txt, and add following fragment to Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp,

```
// Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
...
// Install an instruction selector pass using
// the ISelDag to gen Cpu0 code.
bool Cpu0PassConfig::addInstSelector() {
    PM->add(createCpu0ISelDag(getCpu0TargetMachine()));
    return false;
}

// Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp
/// createCpu0ISelDag - This pass converts a legalized DAG into a
/// CPU0-specific DAG, ready for instruction scheduling.
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0ISelDag(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM) {
    return new Cpu0DAGToDAGISel(TM);
}
```

This version adding the following code in Cpu0InstInfo.cpp to enable debug information which called by llvm at proper time.

```
// Cpu0InstInfo.cpp
...
MachineInstr*
Cpu0InstInfo::emitFrameIndexDebugValue(MachineFunction &MF, int FrameIx,
                                         uint64_t Offset, const MDNode *MDPtr,
                                         DebugLoc DL) const {
    MachineInstrBuilder MIB = BuildMI(MF, DL, get(Cpu0::DBG_VALUE))
        .addFrameIndex(FrameIx).addImm(0).addImm(Offset).addMetadata(MDPtr);
    return &*MIB;
}
```

Build 3/4, run it, we find the error message in 3/3 is gone. The new error message for 3/4 as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
Target didn't implement TargetInstInfo::storeRegToStackSlot!
UNREACHABLE executed at /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/include/llvm/Target/
TargetInstInfo.h:390!
Stack dump:
0.      Program arguments: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s
1.      Running pass 'Function Pass Manager' on module 'ch3.bc'.
2.      Running pass 'Prologue/Epilogue Insertion & Frame Finalization' on function
'@main'
Aborted (core dumped)
```


3.8 Add Prologue/Epilogue functions

Following came from `tricore_llvm.pdf` section “4.4.2 Non-static Register Information”.

For some target architectures, some aspects of the target architecture’s register set are dependent upon variable factors and have to be determined at runtime. As a consequence, they cannot be generated statically from a TableGen description – although that would be possible for the bulk of them in the case of the TriCore backend. Among them are the following points:

- Callee-saved registers. Normally, the ABI specifies a set of registers that a function must save on entry and restore on return if their contents are possibly modified during execution.
- Reserved registers. Although the set of unavailable registers is already defined in the TableGen file, `TriCoreRegisterInfo` contains a method that marks all non-allocatable register numbers in a bit vector.

The following methods are implemented:

- `emitPrologue()` inserts prologue code at the beginning of a function. Thanks to TriCore’s context model, this is a trivial task as it is not required to save any registers manually. The only thing that has to be done is reserving space for the function’s stack frame by decrementing the stack pointer. In addition, if the function needs a frame pointer, the frame register `%a14` is set to the old value of the stack pointer beforehand.
- `emitEpilogue()` is intended to emit instructions to destroy the stack frame and restore all previously saved registers before returning from a function. However, as `%a10` (stack pointer), `%a11` (return address), and `%a14` (frame pointer, if any) are all part of the upper context, no epilogue code is needed at all. All cleanup operations are performed implicitly by the `ret` instruction.
- `eliminateFrameIndex()` is called for each instruction that references a word of data in a stack slot. All previous passes of the code generator have been addressing stack slots through an abstract frame index and an immediate offset. The purpose of this function is to translate such a reference into a register–offset pair. Depending on whether the machine function that contains the instruction has a fixed or a variable stack frame, either the stack pointer `%a10` or the frame pointer `%a14` is used as the base register. The offset is computed accordingly. Figure 3.9 demonstrates for both cases how a stack slot is addressed.

If the addressing mode of the affected instruction cannot handle the address because the offset is too large (the offset field has 10 bits for the BO addressing mode and 16 bits for the BOL mode), a sequence of instructions is emitted that explicitly computes the effective address. Interim results are put into an unused address register. If none is available, an already occupied address register is scavenged. For this purpose, LLVM’s framework offers a class named `RegScavenger` that takes care of all the details.

We will explain the Prologue and Epilogue further by example code. So for the following LLVM IR code, Cpu0 backend will emit the corresponding machine instructions as follows,

```
define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
  %1 = alloca i32, align 4
  store i32 0, i32* %1
  ret i32 0
}

.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file      "ch3.bc"
.text
.globl     main
.align     2
.type      main,@function
.ent       main                                # @main
main:
.frame     $sp,8,$lr
```

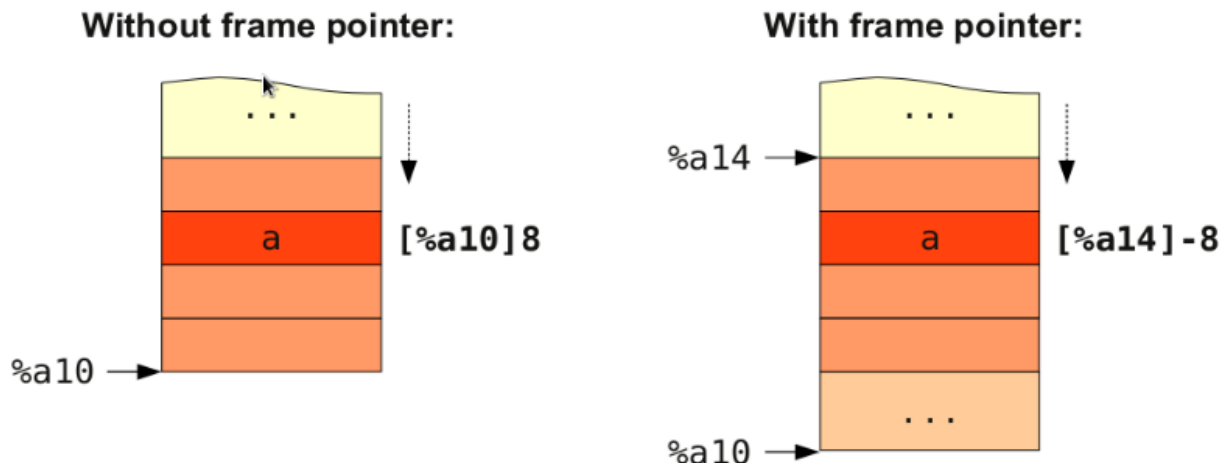


Figure 3.9: Addressing of a variable `a` located on the stack. If the stack frame has a variable size, slot must be addressed relative to the frame pointer

```
.mask      0x00000000,0
.set       noreorder
.set       nomacro
# BB#0:                                     # %entry
addiu      $sp, $sp, -8
addiu      $2, $zero, 0
st         $2, 4($sp)
addiu      $sp, $sp, 8
ret        $lr
.set       macro
.set       reorder
.end       main
$tmpl:
.size      main, ($tmpl)-main
```

LLVM get the stack size by parsing IR and counting how many virtual registers is assigned to local variables. After that, it call `emitPrologue()`. This function will emit machine instructions to adjust `sp` (stack pointer register) for local variables since we don't use `fp` (frame pointer register). For our example, it will emit the instructions,

```
addiu      $sp, $sp, -8
```

The `emitEpilogue` will emit “`addiu $sp, $sp, 8`”, 8 is the stack size.

Since Instruction Selection and Register Allocation occurs before Prologue/Epilogue Code Insertion, `eliminateFrameIndex()` is called after machine instruction and real register allocated. It translate the frame index of local variable (`%1` and `%2` in the following example) into stack offset according the frame index order upward (stack grow up downward from high address to low address, `0($sp)` is the top, `52($sp)` is the bottom) as follows,

```
define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %2 = alloca i32, align 4
    ...
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    store i32 5, i32* %2, align 4
    ...
    ret i32 0
```

```

=> # BB#0:
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -56
$tmp1:
    addiu    $3, $zero, 0
    st       $3, 52($sp)    // %1 is the first frame index local variable, so allocate
                        // in 52($sp)
    addiu    $2, $zero, 5
    st       $2, 48($sp)    // %2 is the second frame index local variable, so
                        // allocate in 48($sp)
    ...
    ret      $lr

```

After add these Prologue and Epilogue functions, and build with 3/5/Cpu0. Now we are ready to compile our example code ch3.bc into cpu0 assembly code. Following is the command and output file ch3.cpu0.s,

```

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.s

```

```

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ cat ch3.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file      "ch3.bc"
.text
.globl     main
.align     2
.type      main,@function
.ent       main                # @main

main:
    .frame   $sp,8,$lr
    .mask    0x00000000,0
    .set     noreorder
    .set     nomacro

# BB#0:                                # %entry
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -8
    addiu    $2, $zero, 0
    st       $2, 4($sp)
    addiu    $sp, $sp, 8
    ret      $lr
    .set     macro
    .set     reorder
    .end     main

$tmp1:
    .size    main, ($tmp1)-main

```

3.9 Summary of this Chapter

We have finished a simple assembler for cpu0 which only support **addiu**, **st** and **ret** 3 instructions.

We are satisfied with this result. But you may think “After so many codes we program, and just get the 3 instructions”. The point is we have created a frame work for cpu0 target machine (please look back the llvm back end structure class inherit tree early in this chapter). Until now, we have around 3050 lines of source code with comments which include files *.cpp, *.h, *.td, CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt. It can be counted by command `wc `find dir -name *.cpp`` for files *.cpp, *.h, *.td, *.txt. LLVM front end tutorial have 700 lines of source code without comments totally. Don’t feel down with this result. In reality, write a back end is warm up slowly but run fast. Clang has over 500,000 lines of source code with comments in clang/lib directory which include C++ and Obj C support. Mips back end has only 15,000 lines with comments. Even the complicate X86 CPU which CISC outside and RISC inside

(micro instruction), has only 45,000 lines with comments. In next chapter, we will show you that add a new instruction support is as easy as 123.

OTHER INSTRUCTIONS

This chapter add more `cpu0` arithmetic instructions support first. The logic operation “**not**” support and translation in [section Operator “not” !](#). The [section Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz](#) will show you the DAG optimization steps and their corresponding `llc` display options. These DAG optimization steps result can be displayed by the graphic tool of Graphviz which supply very useful information with graphic view. You will appreciate Graphviz support in debug, we think. In [section Adjust `cpu0` instructions](#), we adjust `cpu0` instructions to support some data type for C language. The [section Local variable pointer](#) introduce you the local variable pointer translation. Finally, [section Operator `mod`, `%`](#) take care the C operator `%`.

4.1 Support arithmetic instructions

Run the 3/5/`Cpu0 llc` with input file `ch4_1_1.bc` will get the error as follows,

```
// ch4_1_1.cpp
int main()
{
    int a = 5;
    int b = 2;
    int c = 0;

    c = a + b;

    return c;
}

[Gamma@localhost 3]$ clang -c ch4_1_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_1_1.bc
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ llvm-dis ch4_1_1.bc -o ch4_1_1.ll
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ cat ch4_1.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch4_1_1.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:
64-f32:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:64-f80:128:128-
n8:16:32:64-S128"
target triple = "x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu"

define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    store i32 5, i32* %a, align 4
    store i32 2, i32* %b, align 4
```

```
store i32 0, i32* %c, align 4
%2 = load i32* %a, align 4
%3 = load i32* %b, align 4
%4 = add nsw i32 %2, %3
store i32 %4, i32* %c, align 4
%5 = load i32* %c, align 4
ret i32 %5
}

[Gamma@localhost 3]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch4_1_1.bc -o ch4_1_1.
cpu0.s
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x30da480: i32 = add 0x30da280, 0x30da380
[ORD=7] [ID=17]
0x30da280: i32,ch = load 0x30da180, 0x30d9b80, 0x30d9880<LD4[%a]> [ORD=5]
[ID=15]
0x30d9b80: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=2] [ID=5]
0x30d9880: i32 = undef [ORD=1] [ID=3]
0x30da380: i32,ch = load 0x30da180, 0x30d9e80, 0x30d9880<LD4[%b]> [ORD=6]
[ID=14]
0x30d9e80: i32 = FrameIndex<2> [ORD=3] [ID=7]
0x30d9880: i32 = undef [ORD=1] [ID=3]
```

This error says we have not instructions to translate IR DAG node **add**. The ADDiu instruction is defined for node **add** with operands of 1 register and 1 immediate. This node **add** is for 2 registers. So, appending the following code to Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0Schedule.td in 4/1/Cpu0,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
/// Arithmetic Instructions (3-Operand, R-Type)
def CMP      : CmpInstr<0x10, "cmp", IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def ADD      : ArithLogicR<0x13, "add", add, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def SUB      : ArithLogicR<0x14, "sub", sub, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def MUL      : ArithLogicR<0x15, "mul", mul, IIImul, CPURegs, 1>;
def DIV      : ArithLogicR<0x16, "div", sdiv, IIIdiv, CPURegs, 1>;
def AND      : ArithLogicR<0x18, "and", and, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def OR       : ArithLogicR<0x19, "or", or, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def XOR      : ArithLogicR<0x1A, "xor", xor, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;

/// Shift Instructions
def ROL      : ArithLogicR<0x1C, "rol", rotl, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def ROR      : ArithLogicR<0x1D, "ror", rotr, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def SHL      : ArithLogicR<0x1E, "shl", shl, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;
def SHR      : ArithLogicR<0x1F, "shr", sra, IIALu, CPURegs, 1>;

// Cpu0Schedule.td
...
def ALU      : FuncUnit;
def IMULDIV  : FuncUnit;

//=====//
// Instruction Itinerary classes used for Cpu0
//=====//
...
def IIImul    : InstrItinClass;
def IIIdiv    : InstrItinClass;

def IIPpseudo : InstrItinClass;

//=====//
```

```
// Cpu0 Generic instruction itineraries.
//=====//
// http://llvm.org/docs/doxygen/html/structllvm_1_1InstrStage.html
def Cpu0GenericItineraries : ProcessorItineraries<[ALU, IMULDIV], [], [
...
  InstrItinData<IIImul          , [InstrStage<17, [IMULDIV]>]>,
  InstrItinData<IIIdiv         , [InstrStage<38, [IMULDIV]>]>
]>;
```

In RISC CPU like Mips, the multiply/divide function unit and add/sub/logic unit are designed from two different hardware circuits, and more, their data path is separate. We think the cpu0 is the same even though no explanation in it's web site. So, these two function units can be executed at same time (instruction level parallelism). Reference ¹ for instruction itineraries.

Now, let's build 4/1/Cpu0 and run with input file ch4_1_2.cpp. This version can process +, -, *, /, &, |, ^, <<, and >> operators in C language. The corresponding llvm IR instructions are **add**, **sub**, **mul**, **sdiv**, **and**, **or**, **xor**, **shl**, **ashr**. IR instruction **sdiv** stand for signed div while **udiv** is for unsigned div. The '**ashr**' instruction (arithmetic shift right) returns the first operand shifted to the right a specified number of bits with sign extension. In brief, we call **ashr** is "shift with sign extension fill".

Example:

```
<result> = ashr i32 4, 1 ; yields {i32}:result = 2
<result> = ashr i8 -2, 1 ; yields {i8}:result = -1
<result> = ashr i32 1, 32 ; undefined
```

The C operator >> for negative operand is dependent on implementation. Most compiler translate it into "shift with sign extension fill", for example, Mips **sra** is the instruction. Following is the Microsoft web site explanation,

Note: >>, Microsoft Specific

The result of a right shift of a signed negative quantity is implementation dependent. Although Microsoft C++ propagates the most-significant bit to fill vacated bit positions, there is no guarantee that other implementations will do likewise.

In addition to **ashr**, the other instruction "shift with zero filled" **lshr** in llvm (Mips implement lshr with instruction **srl**) has the following meaning.

Example:

```
<result> = lshr i8 -2, 1 ; yields {i8}:result = 0x7FFFFFFF
```

In llvm, IR node **sra** is defined for ashr IR instruction, node **srl** is defined for lshr instruction (I don't know why don't use ashr and lshr as the IR node name directly). We assume Cpu0 shr instruction is "shift with zero filled", and define it with IR DAG node srl. But at that way, Cpu0 will fail to compile $x \gg 1$ in case of x is signed integer because clang and most compilers translate it into ashr, which meaning "shift with sign extension fill". Similarly, Cpu0 div instruction, has the same problem. We assume Cpu0 div instruction is for sdiv which can take care both positive and negative integer, but it will fail for divide operation $/$ "on unsigned integer operand in C".

If we consider the $x \gg 1$ definition is $x = x/2$. In case of x is unsigned int, range x is 0 ~ 4G-1 (0 ~ 0xFFFFFFFF) in 32 bits register, implement shift $\gg 1$ by "shift with zero filled" is correct and satisfy the definition $x = x/2$, but "shift with sign extension fill" is not correct for range 2G ~ 4G-1. In case of x is signed int, range x is -2G ~ 2G-1, implement $x \gg 1$ by "shift with sign extension fill" is correct for the definition, but "shift with zero filled" is not correct for range x is -2G ~ -1. So, if $x = x/2$ is definition for $x \gg 1$, in order to satisfy the definition in both unsigned and signed integer of x, we need those two instructions, "shift with zero filled" and "shift with sign extension fill".

Again, consider the $x \ll 1$ definition is $x = x*2$. We apply the $x \ll 1$ with "shift 1 bit to left and fill the least bit with 0". In case of x is unsigned int, $x \ll 1$ satisfy the definition in range 0 ~ 2G-1, and x is overflow when $x > 2G-1$ (no

¹ http://llvm.org/docs/doxygen/html/structllvm_1_1InstrStage.html

need to care what the register value is because overflow). In case of x is signed int, $x \ll 1$ is correct for $-1G \sim 1G-1$; and x is overflow for $-2G \sim -1G-1$ or $1G \sim 2G-1$. So, implementation by “shift 1bit to left and fill the least bit with 0” satisfy the definition $x = x*2$ for $x \ll 1$, no matter operand x is signed or unsigned int.

Micorsoft implementation references as ².

The sub-section “‘ashr’ Instruction” and sub-section “‘lshr’ Instruction” of ³.

The 4/1 version just add 40 lines code in td files. With these 40 lines code, it process 9 operators more for C language and their corresponding llvm IR instructions. The arithmetic instructions are easy to implement by add the definition in td file only.

4.2 Operator “not” !

Files ch4_2.cpp and ch4_2.bc are the C source code for “not” boolean operator and it’s corresponding llvm IR. List them as follows,

```
// ch4_2.cpp
int main()
{
    int a = 5;
    int b = 0;

    b = !a;

    return b;
}

; ModuleID = 'ch4_2.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:32:32-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:32:64-f32:32:32-f64:32:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32-S128"
target triple = "i386-apple-macosx10.8.0"

define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
    %retval = alloca i32, align 4
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %retval
    store i32 5, i32* %a, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %b, align 4
    %0 = load i32* %a, align 4           // a = %0
    %tobool = icmp ne i32 %0, 0        // ne: stand for not equal
    %lnot = xor i1 %tobool, true
    %conv = zext i1 %lnot to i32
    store i32 %conv, i32* %b, align 4
    %1 = load i32* %b, align 4
    ret i32 %1
}
```

As above comment, $b = !a$, translate to $(xor (icmp\ ne\ i32\ \%0,\ 0),\ true)$. The $\%0$ is the virtual register of variable **a** and the result of $(icmp\ ne\ i32\ \%0,\ 0)$ is 1 bit size. To prove the translation is correct. Let’s assume $\%0 \neq 0$ first, then the $(icmp\ ne\ i32\ \%0,\ 0) = 1$ (or true), and $(xor\ 1,\ 1) = 0$. When $\%0 = 0$, $(icmp\ ne\ i32\ \%0,\ 0) = 0$ (or false), and $(xor\ 0,\ 1) = 1$. So, the translation is correct.

² <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/336xbhcz%28v=vs.80%29.aspx>

³ <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html>.

Now, let's run ch4_2.bc with 4/2/Cpu0 with `llc -debug` option to get result as follows,

```
118-165-16-22:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -debug -relocation-model=pic
-filetype=asm ch4_3.bc -o ch4_3.cpu0.s
...

=== main
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 20 nodes:
...
    0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282bc10: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282c610: ch = setne [ORD=5]

    0x7fbfc282c710: i1 = setcc 0x7fbfc282c510, 0x7fbfc282bc10,
    0x7fbfc282c610 [ORD=5]

    0x7fbfc282c810: i1 = Constant<-1> [ORD=6]

    0x7fbfc282c910: i1 = xor 0x7fbfc282c710, 0x7fbfc282c810 [ORD=6]

    0x7fbfc282ca10: i32 = zero_extend 0x7fbfc282c910 [ORD=7]

...

Replacing.3 0x7fbfc282c910: i1 = xor 0x7fbfc282c710, 0x7fbfc282c810 [ORD=6]

With: 0x7fbfc282ec10: i1 = setcc 0x7fbfc282c510, 0x7fbfc282bc10,
0x7fbfc282e910

Optimized lowered selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 17 nodes:
...
    0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282bc10: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282e910: ch = seteq

    0x7fbfc282ec10: i1 = setcc 0x7fbfc282c510, 0x7fbfc282bc10,
    0x7fbfc282e910

    0x7fbfc282ca10: i32 = zero_extend 0x7fbfc282ec10 [ORD=7]

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 18 nodes:
...
    0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282c510: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282bc10: <multiple use>
        0x7fbfc282e910: ch = seteq [ID=-3]

    0x7fbfc282c610: i32 = setcc 0x7fbfc282c510, 0x7fbfc282bc10,
    0x7fbfc282e910 [ID=-3]

    0x7fbfc282c710: i32 = Constant<1> [ID=-3]
```

```
0x7fbfc282c810: i32 = and 0x7fbfc282c610, 0x7fbfc282c710 [ID=-3]
```

```
...
```

The (setcc %1, %2, setne) and (xor %3, -1) in “Initial selection DAG” stage corresponding (icmp %1, %2, ne) and (xor %3, 1) in ch4_2.bc. The argument in xor is 1 bit size (1 and -1 are same, they are all represented by 1). The (zero_extend %4) of “Initial selection DAG” corresponding (zext i1 %lnot to i32) of ch4_2.bc. As above it translate 2 DAG nodes (setcc %1, %2, setne) and (xor %3, -1) into 1 DAG node (setcc %1, %2, seteq) in “Optimized lowered selection DAG” stage. This translation is right since for 1 bit size, (xor %3, 1) and (not %3) has same result, and (not (setcc %1, %2, setne)) is equal to (setcc %1, %2, seteq). In “Optimized lowered selection DAG” stage, it also translate (zero_exten i1 %lnot to 32) into (and %lnot, 1). (zero_exten i1 %lnot to 32) just expand the %lnot to i32 32 bits result, so translate into (and %lnot, 1) is correct. Finally, translate (setcc %1, %2, seteq) into (xor (xor %1, %2), (ldi \$0, 1) in “Instruction selection” stage by the rule defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...

def : Pat<(not CPURegs:$in),
      (XOR CPURegs:$in, (LDI ZERO, 1))>;

// setcc patterns
multiclass SeteqPats<RegisterClass RC, Instruction XOROp,
                    Register ZEROReg> {
  def : Pat<(seteq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
        (XOROp (XOROp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), (LDI ZERO, 1))>;
}

defm : SeteqPats<CPURegs, XOR, ZERO>;
```

After xor, the (and %4, 1) is translated into (and \$2, (ldi \$3, 1)) which is defined before already. List the asm file ch4_3.cpu0.s code fragment as below, you can check it with the final result.

```
118-165-16-22:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_2.cpu0.s
```

```
...
# BB#0:                                     # %entry
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -16
    $tmp1:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
    addiu    $2, $zero, 0
    st       $2, 12($sp)
    addiu    $3, $zero, 5
    st       $3, 8($sp)
    st       $2, 4($sp)
    ld       $3, 8($sp)
    xor      $2, $3, $2
    ldi      $3, 1
    xor      $2, $2, $3
    addiu    $3, $zero, 1
    and      $2, $2, $3
    st       $2, 4($sp)
    addiu    $sp, $sp, 16
    ret      $lr
...
```

4.3 Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz

The previous section, display the DAG translation process in text on terminal by `llc -debug` option. The `llc` also support the graphic display. The section [Install other tools on iMac](#) mentioned the web for `llc` graphic display information. The `llc` graphic display with tool Graphviz is introduced in this section. The graphic display is more readable by eye than display text in terminal. It's not necessary, but it help a lot especially when you are tired in tracking the DAG translation process. List the `llc` graphic support options from the sub-section "SelectionDAG Instruction Selection Process" of web ⁴ as follows,

Note: The `llc` Graphviz DAG display options

`-view-dag-combine1-dags` displays the DAG after being built, before the first optimization pass.

`-view-legalize-dags` displays the DAG before Legalization.

`-view-dag-combine2-dags` displays the DAG before the second optimization pass.

`-view-isel-dags` displays the DAG before the Select phase.

`-view-sched-dags` displays the DAG before Scheduling.

By tracking `llc -debug`, you can see the DAG translation steps as follows,

```
Initial selection DAG
Optimized lowered selection DAG
Type-legalized selection DAG
Optimized type-legalized selection DAG
Legalized selection DAG
Optimized legalized selection DAG
Instruction selection
Selected selection DAG
Scheduling
...
```

Let's run `llc` with option `-view-dag-combine1-dags`, and open the output result with Graphviz as follows,

```
118-165-12-177:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -view-dag-combine1-dags -march=cpu0
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch4_2.bc -o ch4_2.cpu0.s
Writing '/tmp/llvm_84ibpm/dag.main.dot'... done.
118-165-12-177:InputFiles Jonathan$ Graphviz /tmp/llvm_84ibpm/dag.main.dot
```

It will show the `/tmp/llvm_84ibpm/dag.main.dot` as *llc option -view-dag-combine1-dags graphic view*.

From *llc option -view-dag-combine1-dags graphic view*, we can see the `-view-dag-combine1-dags` option is for Initial selection DAG. We list the other view options and their corresponding DAG translation stage as follows,

```
-view-dag-combine1-dags: Initial selection DAG
-view-legalize-dags: Optimized type-legalized selection DAG
-view-dag-combine2-dags: Legalized selection DAG
-view-isel-dags: Optimized legalized selection DAG
-view-sched-dags: Selected selection DAG
```

The `-view-isel-dags` is important and often used by an LLVM backend writer because it is the DAG before instruction selection. The backend programmer need to know what is the DAG for writing the pattern match instruction in target description file `.td`.

⁴ <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html>

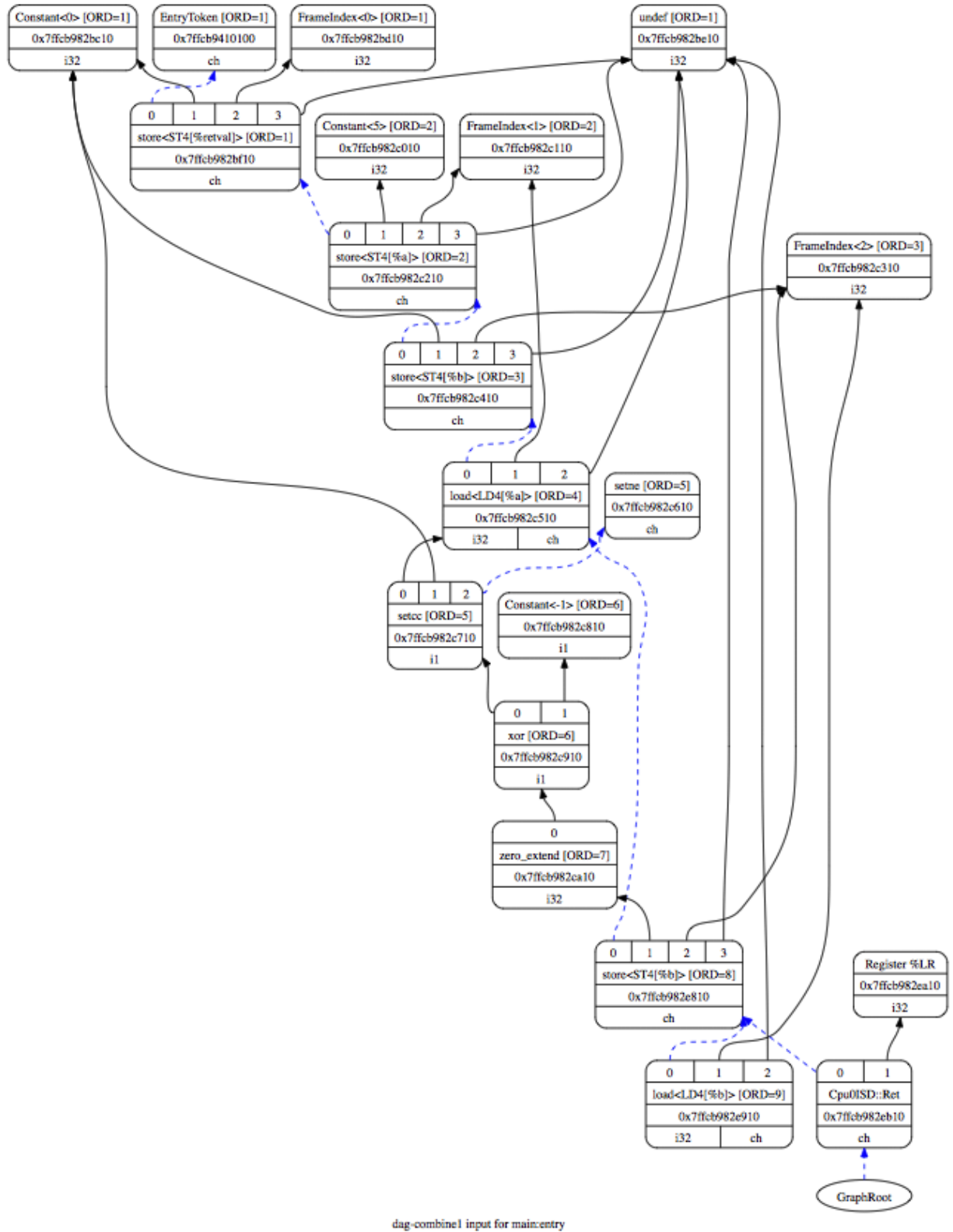


Figure 4.1: llc option -view-dag-combine1-dags graphic view

4.4 Adjust cpu0 instructions

We decide add instructions udiv and sra to avoid compiler errors for C language operators “/” in unsigned int and “>>” in signed int as [section Support arithmetic instructions](#) mentioned. To support these 2 operators, we only need to add these code in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstsInfo.td
...
def UDIV      : ArithLogicR<0x17, "udiv", udiv, IIIDiv, CPURegs, 1>;
...
/// Shift Instructions
// work, it's for ashr llvm IR instruction
def SRA       : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1B, 0x00, "sra", sra>;
```

To use addiu only instead of ldi, change Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstsInfo.td
...
//def LDI      : MoveImm<0x08, "ldi", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
...
// setcc patterns
multiclass SeteqPats<RegisterClass RC, Instruction XOROp> {
  def : Pat<(seteq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
        (XOROp (XOROp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), (ADDiu ZERO, 1))>;
}

defm : SeteqPats<CPURegs, XOR>;
```

Run ch4_4.cpp with code 4/4/Cpu0 which support udiv, sra, and use addiu only instead of ldi, will get the result as follows,

```
// ch4_4.cpp
int main()
{
    int a = 1;
    int b = 2;
    int k = 0;
    unsigned int a1 = -5, f1 = 0;

    f1 = a1 / b;
    k = (a >> 2);

    return k;
}
```

```
118-165-13-40:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch4_4.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_4.bc
118-165-13-40:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_4.bc -o ch4_4.cpu0.s
118-165-13-40:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_4.cpu0.s
```

```
...
addiu    $sp, $sp, -24
addiu    $2, $zero, 0
...
udiv     $2, $3, $2
st       $2, 0($sp)
ld       $2, 16($sp)
sra      $2, $2, 2
```

...

4.4.1 Use cpu0 official LDI instead of ADDiu

According to the [cpu0 web site](#) instruction definition. There is no `addiu` instruction definition. We add **`addiu`** instruction because we find this instruction is more powerful and reasonable than **`ldi`** instruction. We highlight this change in [section CPU0 processor architecture](#). Even with that, we show you how to replace our **`addiu`** with **`ldi`** according to the `cpu0` original design. 4/4_2/Cpu0 is the code changes for use **`ldi`** instruction. These changes replace **`addiu`** with **`ldi`** in `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` and modify `Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp` as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...

/// Arithmetic Instructions (ALU Immediate)
def LDI      : MoveImm<0x08, "ldi", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
// add defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).
//def ADDiu   : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
...

// Small immediates

def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
        (LDI ZERO, imm:$in)>;

// hi/lo relocs
def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (SHL (LDI ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in), 16)>;
// Expect cpu0 add LUI support, like Mips
//def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (LUI tglobaladdr:$in)>;
def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$in), (LDI ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in)>;

def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$lo)),
        (ADD CPURegs:$hi, (LDI ZERO, tglobaladdr:$lo))>;

// gp_rel relocs
def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$gp, (Cpu0GPREl tglobaladdr:$in)),
        (ADD CPURegs:$gp, (LDI ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in))>;

def : Pat<(not CPURegs:$in),
        (XOR CPURegs:$in, (LDI ZERO, 1))>;

// Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp
...
void Cpu0FrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF) const {
    ...
    // Adjust stack.
    if (isInt<16>(-StackSize)) {
        // ldi fp, (-stacksize)
        // add sp, sp, fp
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::LDI), Cpu0::FP).addReg(Cpu0::FP)
            .addImm(-StackSize);
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::ADD), SP).addReg(SP).addReg(Cpu0::FP);
    }
    ...
}

void Cpu0FrameLowering::emitEpilogue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                     MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
```

```

...
// Adjust stack.
if (isInt<16>(-StackSize)) {
    // ldi fp, (-stacksize)
    // add sp, sp, fp
    BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::LDI), Cpu0::FP).addReg(Cpu0::FP)
                                                .addImm(-StackSize);
    BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::ADD), SP).addReg(SP).addReg(Cpu0::FP);
}
...
}

```

As above code, we use **add** IR binary instruction (1 register operand and 1 immediate operand, and the register operand is fixed with ZERO) in our solution since we didn't find the **move** IR unary instruction. This code is correct since all the immediate value is translated into **"ldi Zero, imm/address"**. And **(add CPURegs:\$gp, \$imm16)** is translated into **(ADD CPURegs:\$gp, (LDI ZERO, \$imm16))**. Let's run 4/4_2/Cpu0 with ch4_4.cpp to get the correct result below. As you will see, **"addiu \$sp, \$sp, -24"** will be replaced with the pair instructions of **"ldi \$fp, -24"** and **"add \$sp, \$sp, \$fp"**. Since the \$sp pointer adjustment is so frequently occurs (it occurs in every function entry and exit point), we reserve the \$fp to the pair of stack adjustment instructions **"ldi"** and **"add"**. If we didn't reserve the dedicate registers \$fp and \$sp, it need to save and restore them in the stack adjustment. It meaning more instructions running cost in this. Anyway, the pair of **"ldi"** and **"add"** to adjust stack pointer is double in cost compete to **"addiu"**, that's the benefit we mentioned in [section CPU0 processor architecture](#).

```

118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_4.bc -o ch4_4.cpu0.s

```

```

118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_4.cpu0.s

```

```

.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch4_4.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,24,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
ldi $fp, -24
add $sp, $sp, $fp
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 24
ldi $2, 0
st $2, 20($sp)
ldi $3, 1
st $3, 16($sp)
ldi $3, 2
st $3, 12($sp)
st $2, 8($sp)
ldi $3, -5
st $3, 4($sp)
st $2, 0($sp)
ld $2, 12($sp)
ld $3, 4($sp)

```

```
    udiv  $2, $3, $2
    st   $2, 0($sp)
    ld   $2, 16($sp)
    sra  $2, $2, 2
    st   $2, 8($sp)
    ldi  $fp, 24
    add  $sp, $sp, $fp
    ret  $lr
    .set  macro
    .set  reorder
    .end  main
$tmp2:
    .size main, ($tmp2)-main
    .cfi_endproc
```

4.5 Local variable pointer

To support pointer to local variable, add this code fragment in Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
def mem_ea : Operand<i32> {
    let PrintMethod = "printMemOperandEA";
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPURegs, simm16);
    let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}
...
class EffectiveAddress<string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC, Operand Mem> :
    FMem<0x09, (outs RC:$ra), (ins Mem:$addr),
        instr_asm, [(set RC:$ra, addr:$addr)], IIALu>;
...
// FrameIndexes are legalized when they are operands from load/store
// instructions. The same not happens for stack address copies, so an
// add op with mem ComplexPattern is used and the stack address copy
// can be matched. It's similar to Sparc LEA_ADDDi
def LEA_ADDiu : EffectiveAddress<"addiu\t$ra, $addr", CPURegs, mem_ea> {
    let isCodeGenOnly = 1;
}

// Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp
...
void Cpu0InstPrinter::
printMemOperandEA(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O) {
    // when using stack locations for not load/store instructions
    // print the same way as all normal 3 operand instructions.
    printOperand(MI, opNum, O);
    O << ", ";
    printOperand(MI, opNum+1, O);
    return;
}
```

Run ch4_5.cpp with code 4/5/Cpu0 which support pointer to local variable, will get result as follows,

```
// ch4_5.cpp
int main()
{
```



```

int b = 3;

int* p = &b;

return *p;
}

```

```

118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch4_5.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_5.bc
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_5.bc -o ch4_5.cpu0.s
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_5.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch4_5.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -16
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
    addiu $2, $zero, 0
    st $2, 12($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 3
    st $2, 8($sp)
    addiu $2, $sp, 8
    st $2, 0($sp)
    addiu $sp, $sp, 16
    ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp2:
.size main, ($tmp2)-main
.cfi_endproc

```

4.6 Operator mod, %

4.6.1 The DAG of %

Example input code ch4_6.cpp which contains the C operator “%” and it’s corresponding llvm IR, as follows,

```

// ch4_6.cpp
int main()
{
    int b = 11;

```

```
// unsigned int b = 11;

b = (b+1)%12;

return b;
}

; ModuleID = 'ch4_6.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:32:32:32-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:32:64-
f32:32:32-f64:32:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32-S128"
target triple = "i386-apple-macosx10.8.0"

define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
    %retval = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %retval
    store i32 11, i32* %b, align 4
    %0 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %add = add nsw i32 %0, 1
    %rem = srem i32 %add, 12
    store i32 %rem, i32* %b, align 4
    %1 = load i32* %b, align 4
    ret i32 %1
}
```

LLVM **srem** is the IR corresponding “%”, reference sub-section “srem instruction” of ³. Copy the reference as follows,

Note: ‘srem’ Instruction

Syntax: <result> = srem <ty> <op1>, <op2> ; yields {ty}:result

Overview: The ‘srem’ instruction returns the remainder from the signed division of its two operands. This instruction can also take vector versions of the values in which case the elements must be integers.

Arguments: The two arguments to the ‘srem’ instruction must be integer or vector of integer values. Both arguments must have identical types.

Semantics: This instruction returns the remainder of a division (where the result is either zero or has the same sign as the dividend, op1), not the modulo operator (where the result is either zero or has the same sign as the divisor, op2) of a value. For more information about the difference, see The Math Forum. For a table of how this is implemented in various languages, please see Wikipedia: modulo operation.

Note that signed integer remainder and unsigned integer remainder are distinct operations; for unsigned integer remainder, use ‘urem’.

Taking the remainder of a division by zero leads to undefined behavior. Overflow also leads to undefined behavior; this is a rare case, but can occur, for example, by taking the remainder of a 32-bit division of -2147483648 by -1. (The remainder doesn’t actually overflow, but this rule lets srem be implemented using instructions that return both the result of the division and the remainder.)

Example: <result> = srem i32 4, %var ; yields {i32}:result = 4 % %var

Run 4/5/Cpu0 with input file ch4_6.bc and llc option -view-isel-dags as follows, will get the error message as follows and the llvm DAG of *ch4_6.bc* DAG.

```
118-165-79-37:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -view-isel-dags -relocation-model=
```

```

pic -filetype=asm ch4_6.bc -o ch4_6.cpu0.s
...
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x7fa73a02ea10: i32 = mulhs 0x7fa73a02c610,
0x7fa73a02e910 [ID=12]
    0x7fa73a02c610: i32 = Constant<12> [ORD=5] [ID=7]
    0x7fa73a02e910: i32 = Constant<715827883> [ID=9]

```

LLVM replace srem divide operation with multiply operation in DAG optimization because DIV operation cost more in time than MUL. For example code “**int b = 11; b=(b+1)%12;**”, it translate into *ch4_6.bc* DAG. We verify the result and explain by calculate the value in each node. The $0xC * 0x2AAAAAAB = 0x2,00000004$, (mulhs $0xC$, $0x2AAAAAAB$) meaning get the Signed mul high word (32bits). Multiply with 2 operands of 1 word size generate the 2 word size of result ($0x2, 0xAAAAAAB$). The high word result, in this case is $0x2$. The final result (sub 12, 12) is 0 which match the statement $(11+1)\%12$.

4.6.2 Arm solution

Let’s run 4/6_1/Cpu0 with ch4_6.cpp as well as `llc -view-sched-dags` option to get *Translate ch4_6.bc into cpu0 backend DAG*. Similarly, SMMUL get the high word of multiply result.

Follows is the result of run 4/6_1/Cpu0 with ch4_6.bc.

```

118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_6.bc -o ch4_6.cpu0.s
118-165-71-252:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_6.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch4_6.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main

main:
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0: # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 11
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 10922
shl $2, $2, 16
addiu $3, $zero, 43691
or $3, $2, $3
addiu $2, $zero, 12
smmul $3, $2, $3
shr $4, $3, 31
sra $3, $3, 1
add $3, $3, $4
mul $3, $3, $2
sub $2, $2, $3
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8

```

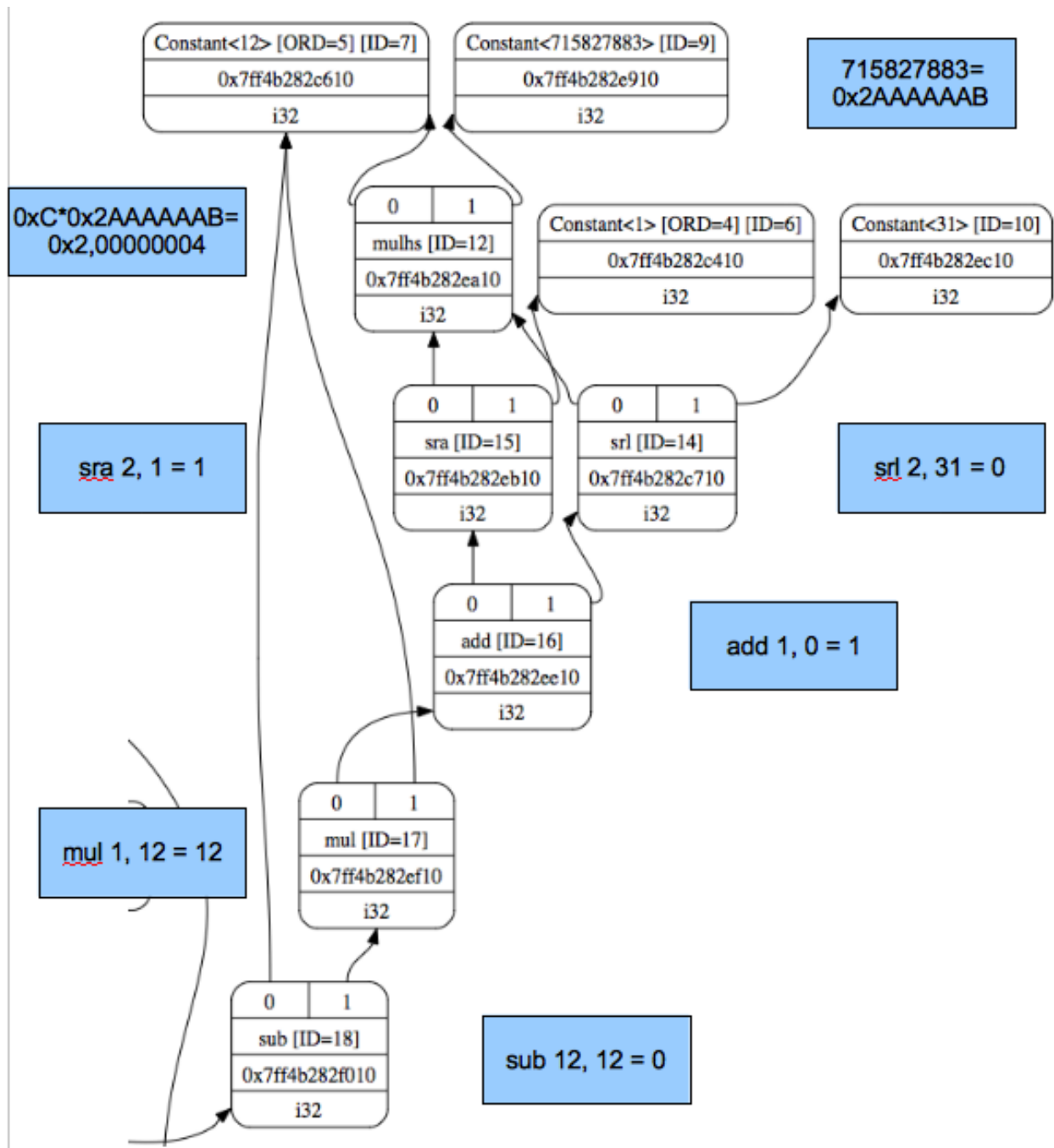


Figure 4.2: ch4_6.bc DAG

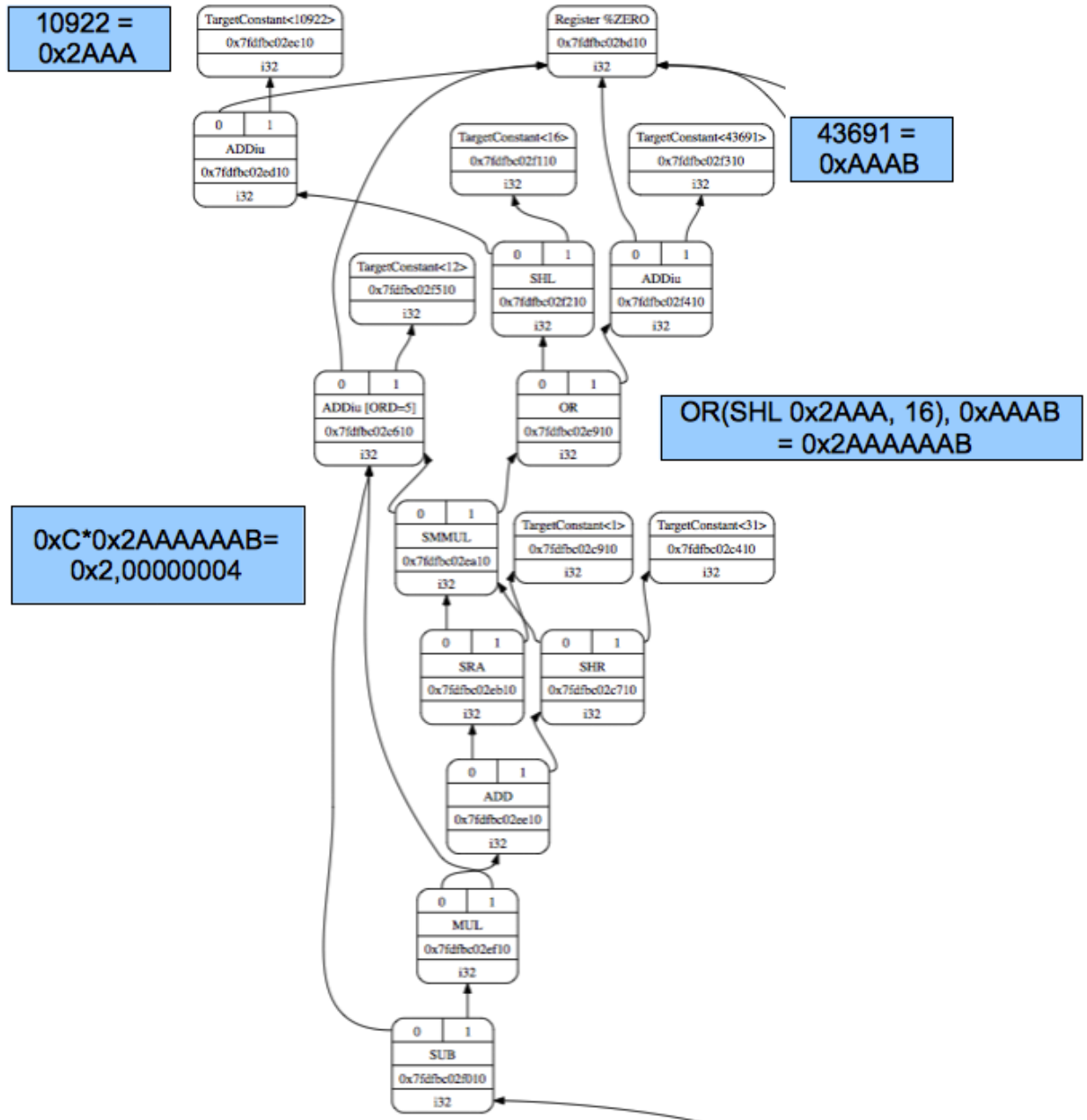


Figure 4.3: Translate ch4_6.bc into cpu0 backend DAG

```
ret $lr
.set    macro
.set    reorder
.end    main
$tmp1:
.size   main, ($tmp1)-main
```

The other instruction UMMUL and llvm IR mulhu are unsigned int type for operator %. You can check it by unmark the “**unsigned int b = 11;**” in ch4_6.cpp.

Use SMMUL instruction to get the high word of multiplication result is adopted in ARM. The 4/6_1/Cpu0 use the ARM solution. With this solution, the following code is needed.

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
// Transformation Function - get the lower 16 bits.
def LO16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [{
  return getImm(N, N->getZExtValue() & 0xFFFF);
}]>;

// Transformation Function - get the higher 16 bits.
def HI16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [{
  return getImm(N, (N->getZExtValue() >> 16) & 0xFFFF);
}]>;
...
def SMMUL : ArithLogicR<0x50, "smmul", mulhs, IIImul, CPURegs, 1>;
def UMMUL : ArithLogicR<0x51, "ummul", mulhu, IIImul, CPURegs, 1>;
...
// Arbitrary immediates
def : Pat<(i32 imm:$imm),
  (OR (SHL (ADDiu ZERO, (HI16 imm:$imm)), 16), (ADDiu ZERO, (LO16 imm:$imm)))>;
```

4.6.3 Mips solution

Mips use MULT instruction and save the high & low part to register HI and LO. After that, use mfhi/mflo to move register HI/LO to your general purpose register. ARM SMMUL is fast if you only need the HI part of result (it ignore the LO part of operation). Meanwhile Mips is fast if you need both the HI and LO result. If you need the LO part of result, you can use Cpu0 MUL instruction which only get the LO part of result. 4/6_2/Cpu0 is implemented with Mips MULT style. We choose it as the implementation of this book. For Mips style implementation, we add the following code in Cpu0RegisterInfo.td, Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp. And list the related DAG nodes mulhs and mulhu which are used in 4/6_2/Cpu0 from TargetSelectionDAG.td.

```
// Cpu0RegisterInfo.td
...
// Hi/Lo registers
def HI : Register<"hi">, DwarfRegNum<[18]>;
def LO : Register<"lo">, DwarfRegNum<[19]>;

// Cpu0Schedule.td
...
def IHiLo : InstrItinClass;
...
def Cpu0GenericItineraries : ProcessorItineraries<[ALU, IMULDIV], [], [
  ...
  InstrItinData<IHiLo, [InstrStage<1, [IMULDIV]>]>,
  ...
]>;
```

```

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
// Mul, Div
class Mult<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin,
    RegisterClass RC, list<Register> DefRegs>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, RC:$rb),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"), [], itin> {
    let imm16 = 0;
    let isCommutable = 1;
    let Defs = DefRegs;
    let neverHasSideEffects = 1;
}

class Mult32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin>:
    Mult<op, instr_asm, itin, CPURegs, [HI, LO]>;

// Move from Hi/Lo
class MoveFromLOHI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC,
    list<Register> UseRegs>:
    FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [], IHIHiLo> {
    let rb = 0;
    let imm16 = 0;
    let Uses = UseRegs;
    let neverHasSideEffects = 1;
}

...
def MULT      : Mult32<0x50, "mult", IIMul>;
def MULTu     : Mult32<0x51, "multu", IIMul>;

def MFHI : MoveFromLOHI<0x40, "mfhi", CPURegs, [HI]>;
def MFLO : MoveFromLOHI<0x41, "mflo", CPURegs, [LO]>;

// Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp
...
/// Select multiply instructions.
std::pair<SDNode*, SDNode*>
Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::SelectMULT(SDNode *N, unsigned Opc, DebugLoc dl, EVT Ty,
    bool HasLo, bool HasHi) {
    SDNode *Lo = 0, *Hi = 0;
    SDNode *Mul = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Opc, dl, MVT::Glue, N->getOperand(0),
        N->getOperand(1));
    SDValue InFlag = SDValue(Mul, 0);

    if (HasLo) {
        Lo = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFLO, dl,
            Ty, MVT::Glue, InFlag);
        InFlag = SDValue(Lo, 1);
    }
    if (HasHi)
        Hi = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFHI, dl,
            Ty, InFlag);

    return std::make_pair(Lo, Hi);
}

/// Select instructions not customized! Used for
/// expanded, promoted and normal instructions

```

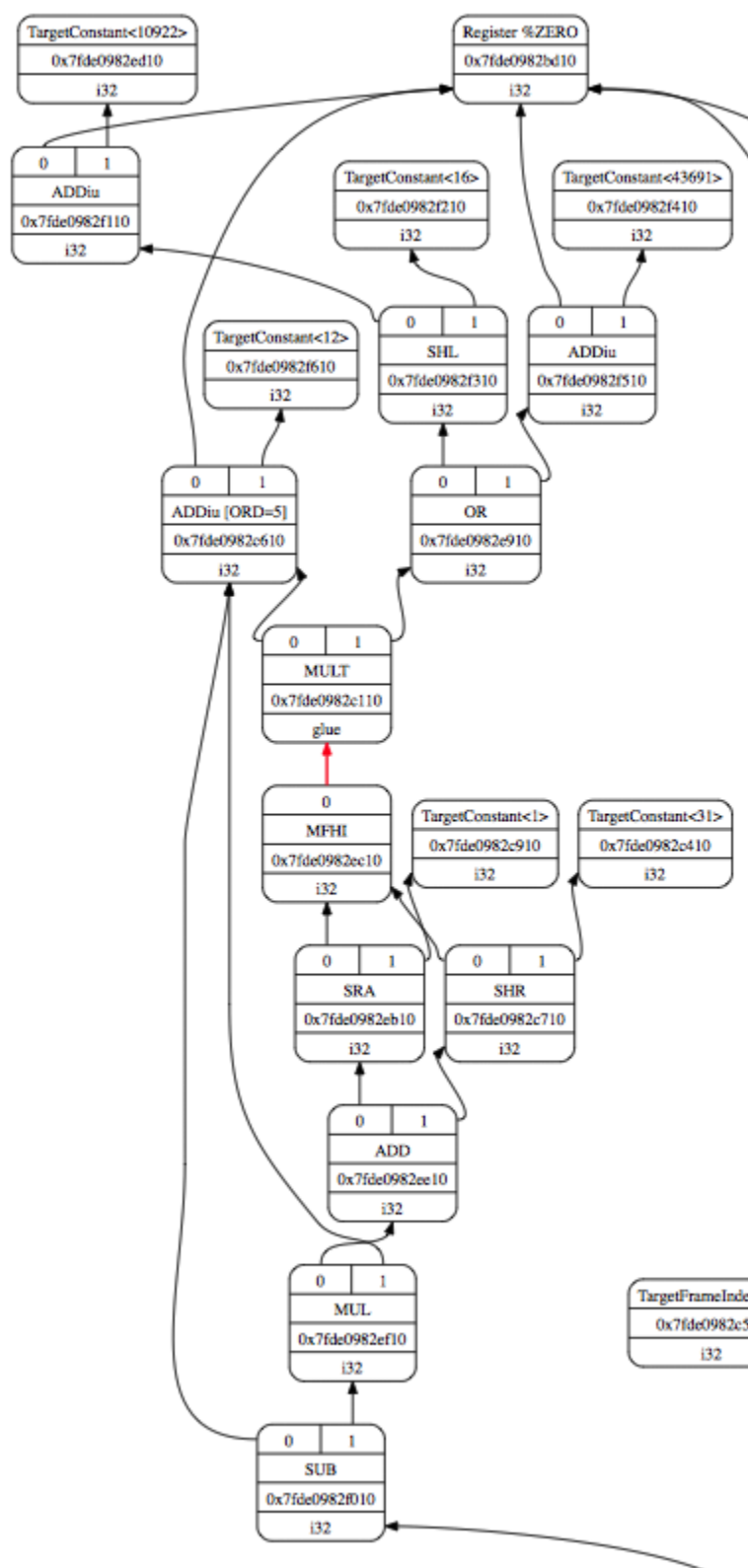
```
SDNode* Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select(SDNode *Node) {
    unsigned Opcode = Node->getOpcode();
    ...
    switch(Opcode) {
    default: break;

    case ISD::MULHS:
    case ISD::MULHU: {
        MultOpc = (Opcode == ISD::MULHU ? Cpu0::MULTu : Cpu0::MULT);
        return SelectMULT(Node, MultOpc, dl, NodeTy, false, true).second;
    }
    ...
}

// TargetSelectionDAG.td
...
def mulhs      : SDNode<"ISD::MULHS"      , SDTIntBinOp, [SDNPCommutative]>;
def mulhu      : SDNode<"ISD::MULHU"      , SDTIntBinOp, [SDNPCommutative]>;
```

Except the custom type, llvm IR operations of expand and promote type will call `Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select()` during instruction selection of DAG translation. In `Select()`, it return the HI part of multiplication result to HI register, for IR operations of `mulhs` or `mulhu`. After that, MFHI instruction move the HI register to `cpu0` field “a” register, `$ra`. MFHI instruction is FL format and only use `cpu0` field “a” register, we set the `$rb` and `imm16` to 0. *DAG for ch4_6.bc with Mips style MULT* and `ch4_6.cpu0.s` are the result of compile `ch4_6.bc`.

```
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_6.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch4_6.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 11
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 10922
shl $2, $2, 16
addiu $3, $zero, 43691
or $3, $2, $3
addiu $2, $zero, 12
mult $2, $3
mfhi $3
shr $4, $3, 31
sra $3, $3, 1
add $3, $3, $4
```

```
mul $3, $3, $2
sub $2, $2, $3
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp2:
.size main, ($tmp2)-main
.cfi_endproc
```

4.7 Full support %

The sensitive readers may find the llvm using “**multiplication**” instead of “**div**” to get the “**%**” result just because our example use constant as divider, “**(b+1)%12**” in our example. If programmer use variable as the divider like “**(b+1)%a**”, then what will happens in our code. The answer is our code will have error to take care this. In [section Support arithmetic instructions](#), we use “**div a, b**” to hold the quotient part in register. The multiplication operator “*****” need 64 bits of register to hold the result for two 32 bits of operands multiplication. We modify cpu0 to use the pair of registers LO and HI which just like Mips to solve this issue in last section. Now, it’s time to modify cpu0 for integer “**divide**” operator again. We use LO and HI registers to hold the “**quotient**” and “**remainder**” and use instructions “**mflo**” and “**mfhi**” to get the result from LO or HI registers. With this solution, the “**c = a / b**” can be got by “**div a, b**” and “**mflo c**”; the “**c = a % b**” can be got by “**div a, b**” and “**mfhi c**”.

4/6_4/Cpu0 support operator “**%**” and “**/**”. The code added in 4/6_4/Cpu0 as follows,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
...
void Cpu0InstrInfo::
copyPhysReg(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
             MachineBasicBlock::iterator I, DebugLoc DL,
             unsigned DestReg, unsigned SrcReg,
             bool KillSrc) const {
    unsigned Opc = 0, ZeroReg = 0;

    if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(DestReg)) { // Copy to CPU Reg.
        if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(SrcReg))
            Opc = Cpu0::ADD, ZeroReg = Cpu0::ZERO;
        else if (SrcReg == Cpu0::HI)
            Opc = Cpu0::MFHI, SrcReg = 0;
        else if (SrcReg == Cpu0::LO)
            Opc = Cpu0::MFLO, SrcReg = 0;
    }
    else if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(SrcReg)) { // Copy from CPU Reg.
        if (DestReg == Cpu0::HI)
            Opc = Cpu0::MTHI, DestReg = 0;
        else if (DestReg == Cpu0::LO)
            Opc = Cpu0::MTLO, DestReg = 0;
    }

    assert(Opc && "Cannot copy registers");

    MachineInstrBuilder MIB = BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc));

    if (DestReg)
        MIB.addReg(DestReg, RegState::Define);
}
```

```

    if (ZeroReg)
    MIB.addReg(ZeroReg);

    if (SrcReg)
    MIB.addReg(SrcReg, getKillRegState(KillSrc));
}

// Cpu0InstrInfo.h
...
virtual void copyPhysReg(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
    MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI, DebugLoc DL,
    unsigned DestReg, unsigned SrcReg,
    bool KillSrc) const;

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
def SDT_Cpu0DivRem      : SDTypeProfile<0, 2,
    [SDTCisInt<0>,
    SDTCisSameAs<0, 1>]>;

...
// DivRem(u) nodes
def Cpu0DivRem      : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::DivRem", SDT_Cpu0DivRem,
    [SDNPOutGlue]>;
def Cpu0DivRemU     : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::DivRemU", SDT_Cpu0DivRem,
    [SDNPOutGlue]>;

...
class Div<SDNode opNode, bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin,
    RegisterClass RC, list<Register> DefRegs>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$$zero, $rb, $rc"),
    [(opNode RC:$rb, RC:$rc)], itin> {
    let imm16 = 0;
    let Defs = DefRegs;
}

class Div32<SDNode opNode, bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin>:
    Div<opNode, op, instr_asm, itin, CPURegs, [HI, LO]>;

...
class MoveToLOHI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC,
    list<Register> DefRegs>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [], IIHiLo> {
    let rb = 0;
    let imm16 = 0;
    let Defs = DefRegs;
    let neverHasSideEffects = 1;
}

...
def SDIV      : Div32<Cpu0DivRem, 0x16, "div", IIIdiv>;
def UDIV      : Div32<Cpu0DivRemU, 0x17, "divu", IIIdiv>;

...
def MTHI : MoveToLOHI<0x42, "mthi", CPURegs, [HI]>;
def MTLO : MoveToLOHI<0x43, "mtlo", CPURegs, [LO]>;

// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
...
Cpu0TargetLowering::
Cpu0TargetLowering(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM)

```

```

: TargetLowering(TM, new TargetLoweringObjectFileELF()),
Subtarget(&TM.getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()) {
...
setOperationAction(ISD::SDIV, MVT::i32, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::SREM, MVT::i32, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::UDIV, MVT::i32, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::UREM, MVT::i32, Expand);

setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::SDIVREM);
setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::UDIVREM);
...
}
...
static SDValue PerformDivRemCombine(SDNode *N, SelectionDAG& DAG,
                                   TargetLowering::DAGCombinerInfo &DCI,
                                   const Cpu0Subtarget* Subtarget) {
    if (DCI.isBeforeLegalizeOps())
        return SDValue();

    EVT Ty = N->getValueType(0);
    unsigned LO = Cpu0::LO;
    unsigned HI = Cpu0::HI;
    unsigned opc = N->getOpcode() == ISD::SDIVREM ? Cpu0ISD::DivRem :
                                                Cpu0ISD::DivRemU;
    DebugLoc dl = N->getDebugLoc();

    SDValue DivRem = DAG.getNode(opc, dl, MVT::Glue,
                                N->getOperand(0), N->getOperand(1));
    SDValue InChain = DAG.getEntryNode();
    SDValue InGlue = DivRem;

    // insert MFLO
    if (N->hasAnyUseOfValue(0)) {
        SDValue CopyFromLo = DAG.getCopyFromReg(InChain, dl, LO, Ty,
                                                InGlue);
        DAG.ReplaceAllUsesOfValueWith(SDValue(N, 0), CopyFromLo);
        InChain = CopyFromLo.getValue(1);
        InGlue = CopyFromLo.getValue(2);
    }

    // insert MFHI
    if (N->hasAnyUseOfValue(1)) {
        SDValue CopyFromHi = DAG.getCopyFromReg(InChain, dl,
                                                HI, Ty, InGlue);
        DAG.ReplaceAllUsesOfValueWith(SDValue(N, 1), CopyFromHi);
    }

    return SDValue();
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::PerformDAGCombine(SDNode *N, DAGCombinerInfo &DCI)
const {
    SelectionDAG &DAG = DCI.DAG;
    unsigned opc = N->getOpcode();

    switch (opc) {
    default: break;
    case ISD::SDIVREM:

```

```

case ISD::UDIVREM:
return PerformDivRemCombine(N, DAG, DCI, Subtarget);
}

return SDValue();
}

// Cpu0ISelLowering.h
...
namespace llvm {
  namespace Cpu0ISD {
    enum NodeType {
      // Start the numbering from where ISD NodeType finishes.
      FIRST_NUMBER = ISD::BUILTIN_OP_END,
      Ret,
      // DivRem(u)
      DivRem,
      DivRemU
    };
  }
}
...

// Cpu0RegisterInfo.td
...
// Hi/Lo Registers
def HILO : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add HI, LO)>;

```

Run with `ch4_1_2.cpp` can get the result for operator “/” as below. But run with `ch4_6_1.cpp` as below, cannot get the “div” for operator “%”. It still use “multiplication” instead of “div” because llvm do “**Constant Propagation Optimization**” in this. The `ch4_6_2.cpp` can get the “div” for “%” result since it make the llvm “**Constant Propagation Optimization**” useless in this. Unfortunately, we cannot run it now since it need the function call support. We will verify “%” with `ch4_6_2.cpp` at the end of chapter “Function Call”. You can run with the end of Example Code of chapter “Function Call”, if you like to verify it now.

```

// ch4_1_2.cpp
int main()
{
  ...
  f = a / b;
  ...
}

```

```

118-165-77-79:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch4_1_2.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_1_2.bc
118-165-77-79:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_1_2.bc -o ch4_1_2.cpu0.s
118-165-77-79:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_1_2.cpu0.s
    div $zero, $3, $2
    mflo $2
    ...

```

```

// ch4_6_1.cpp
int main()
{
  int b = 11;
  int a = 12;

  b = (b+1)%a;

```

```
    return b;
}

// ch4_6_2.cpp
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    int b = 11;
    // unsigned int b = 11;
    int c = rand();

    b = (b+1)%c;

    return b;
}
```

4.8 Summary

We support most of C operators in this chapter. Until now, we have around 3400 lines of source code with comments. With these 345 lines of source code added, it support the number of operators from three to over ten.

GENERATE OBJ FILE

The previous chapters only introduce the assembly code generated. This chapter will introduce you the obj support first, and display the obj by objdump utility. With LLVM support, the cpu0 backend can generate both big endian and little endian obj files with only a few code added. The Target Registration mechanism and their structure will be introduced in this chapter.

5.1 Translate into obj file

Currently, we only support translate llvm IR code into assembly code. If you try to run 4/6_2/Cpu0 to translate obj code will get the error message as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch4_1_2.bc -o ch4_1_2.cpu0.o
/usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc: target does not
support generation of this file type!
```

The 5/Cpu0 support obj file generated. It can get result for big endian and little endian with command llc -march=cpu0 and llc -march=cpu0el. Run it will get the obj files as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ cat ch4_1_2.cpu0.s
```

```
...
    .set      nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -72
    addiu    $2, $zero, 0
    st       $2, 68($sp)
    addiu    $3, $zero, 5
    st       $3, 64($sp)
...
```

```
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch4_2.bc -o ch4_2.cpu0.o
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ objdump -s ch4_2.cpu0.o
```

```
ch4_2.cpu0.o:          file format elf32-big
```

```
Contents of section .text:
```

```
0000 09d0ffb8 09200000 012d0044 09300005  ....-..D.0..
0010 013d0040 09300002 013d003c 012d0038  .=@.0...=.<.-.8
0020 012d0034 012d0014 0930ffff 013d0010  -.4.-...0...=.
0030 012d000c 012d0008 002d003c 003d0040  .-...-...-.<.=.@
0040 13232000 012d0038 002d003c 003d0040  .# ..-.8.-.<.=.@
```

```

0050 14232000 012d0034 002d003c 003d0040 .# ..-.4.-.<.=.@
0060 15232000 012d0030 002d003c 003d0040 .# ..-.0.-.<.=.@
0070 16232000 012d002c 002d003c 003d0040 .# ..-.,.-.<.=.@
0080 18232000 012d0028 002d003c 003d0040 .# ..-.(.-.<.=.@
0090 19232000 012d0024 002d003c 003d0040 .# ..-.$.-.<.=.@
00a0 1a232000 012d0020 002d0040 1e220002 .# ..-. .-.@."..
00b0 012d001c 002d0010 1e220002 012d0004 .-...-..."...-..
00c0 002d0010 1f220002 012d000c 09d00048 .-..."...-.....H
00d0 2c00000e                                     ,....
Contents of section .eh_frame:
0000 00000010 00000000 017a5200 017c0e01 .....zR..|..
0010 000c0d00 00000010 00000018 00000000 .....
0020 000000d4 00440e48 .....D.H
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0el -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch4_2.bc -o ch4_2.cpu0el.o
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ objdump -s ch4_2.cpu0el.o

ch4_2.cpu0el.o:          file format elf32-little

Contents of section .text:
0000 b8fffd09 00002009 44002d01 05003009 ..... .D.-...0.
0010 40003d01 02003009 3c003d01 38002d01 @.=...0.<.=.8.-.
0020 34002d01 14002d01 fbff3009 10003d01 4.-...-...0...=.
0030 0c002d01 08002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 .-...-.-.<.-.@.=.
0040 00202313 38002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.8.-.<.-.@.=.
0050 00202314 34002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.4.-.<.-.@.=.
0060 00202315 30002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.0.-.<.-.@.=.
0070 00202316 2c002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.,.-.<.-.@.=.
0080 00202318 28002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.(.-.<.-.@.=.
0090 00202319 24002d01 3c002d00 40003d00 . #.$.-.<.-.@.=.
00a0 0020231a 20002d01 40002d00 0200221e . #. .-.@.-..."
00b0 1c002d01 10002d00 0200221e 04002d01 ..-...-..."...-..
00c0 10002d00 0200221f 0c002d01 4800d009 ..-..."...-..H...
00d0 0e00002c                                     ....,

Contents of section .eh_frame:
0000 10000000 00000000 017a5200 017c0e01 .....zR..|..
0010 000c0d00 10000000 18000000 00000000 .....
0020 d4000000 00440e48 .....D.H

```

The first instruction is “**addiu \$sp, -72**” and it’s corresponding obj is 0x09d0ffb8. The addiu opcode is 0x09, 8 bits, \$sp register number is 13(0xd), 4bits, second register is useless, so assign it to 0x0, and the immediate is 16 bits -72(=0xffb8), so it’s correct. The third instruction “**st \$2, 68(\$sp)**” and it’s corresponding obj is 0x012d0044. The **st** opcode is **0x0a**, \$2 is 0x2, \$sp is 0xd and immediate is 68(0x0044). Thanks to cpu0 instruction format which opcode, register operand and offset(imediate value) size are multiple of 4 bits. The obj format is easy to check by eye. The big endian (B0, B1, B2, B3) = (09, d0, ff, b8), objdump from B0 to B3 as 0x09d0ffb8 and the little endian is (B3, B2, B1, B0) = (09, d0, ff, b8), objdump from B0 to B3 as 0xb8ffd009.

5.2 Backend Target Registration Structure

Now, let’s examine Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp.

```

// Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp
...
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {
    // Register the MC asm info.

```



```

RegisterMCAsmInfoFn X(TheCpu0Target, createCpu0MCAsmInfo);
RegisterMCAsmInfoFn Y(TheCpu0elTarget, createCpu0MCAsmInfo);

// Register the MC codegen info.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeGenInfo(TheCpu0Target,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeGenInfo);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeGenInfo(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeGenInfo);

// Register the MC instruction info.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstrInfo(TheCpu0Target, createCpu0MCInstrInfo);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstrInfo(TheCpu0elTarget, createCpu0MCInstrInfo);

// Register the MC register info.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCRegInfo(TheCpu0Target, createCpu0MCRegisterInfo);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCRegInfo(TheCpu0elTarget, createCpu0MCRegisterInfo);
// Register the MC Code Emitter
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0Target,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL);

// Register the object streamer.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCObjectStreamer(TheCpu0Target, createMCStreamer);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCObjectStreamer(TheCpu0elTarget, createMCStreamer);
// Register the asm backend.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0Target,
                                    createCpu0AsmBackendEB32);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                    createCpu0AsmBackendEL32);

// Register the MC subtarget info.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCSubtargetInfo(TheCpu0Target,
                                       createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCSubtargetInfo(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                       createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo);

// Register the MCInstPrinter.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstPrinter(TheCpu0Target,
                                     createCpu0MCInstPrinter);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstPrinter(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                     createCpu0MCInstPrinter);
}

```

Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp do the target registration as mentioned in “section Target Registration”¹ of the last chapter. Drawing the register function and those class it registered in *Register Cpu0MCAsmInfo* to *Register Cpu0InstPrinter* for explanation.

In *Register Cpu0MCAsmInfo*, registering the object of class Cpu0AsmInfo for target TheCpu0Target and TheCpu0elTarget. TheCpu0Target is for big endian and TheCpu0elTarget is for little endian. Cpu0AsmInfo is derived from MCAsmInfo which is llvm built-in class. Most code is implemented in it's parent, back end reuse those code by inherit.

In *Register MCCodeGenInfo*, instanting MCCodeGenInfo, and initialize it by pass Roloc::PIC because we use command `llc -relocation-model=pic` to tell llc compile using position-independent code mode. Recall the addressing mode in system program book has two mode, one is PIC mode, the other is absolute addressing mode. MC stands for Machine Code.

In *Register MCInstrInfo*, instanting MCInstrInfo object X, and initialize it by `InitCpu0MCInstrInfo(X)`. Since `InitCpu0MCInstrInfo(X)` is defined in Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc, it will add the information from Cpu0InstrInfo.td we

¹ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

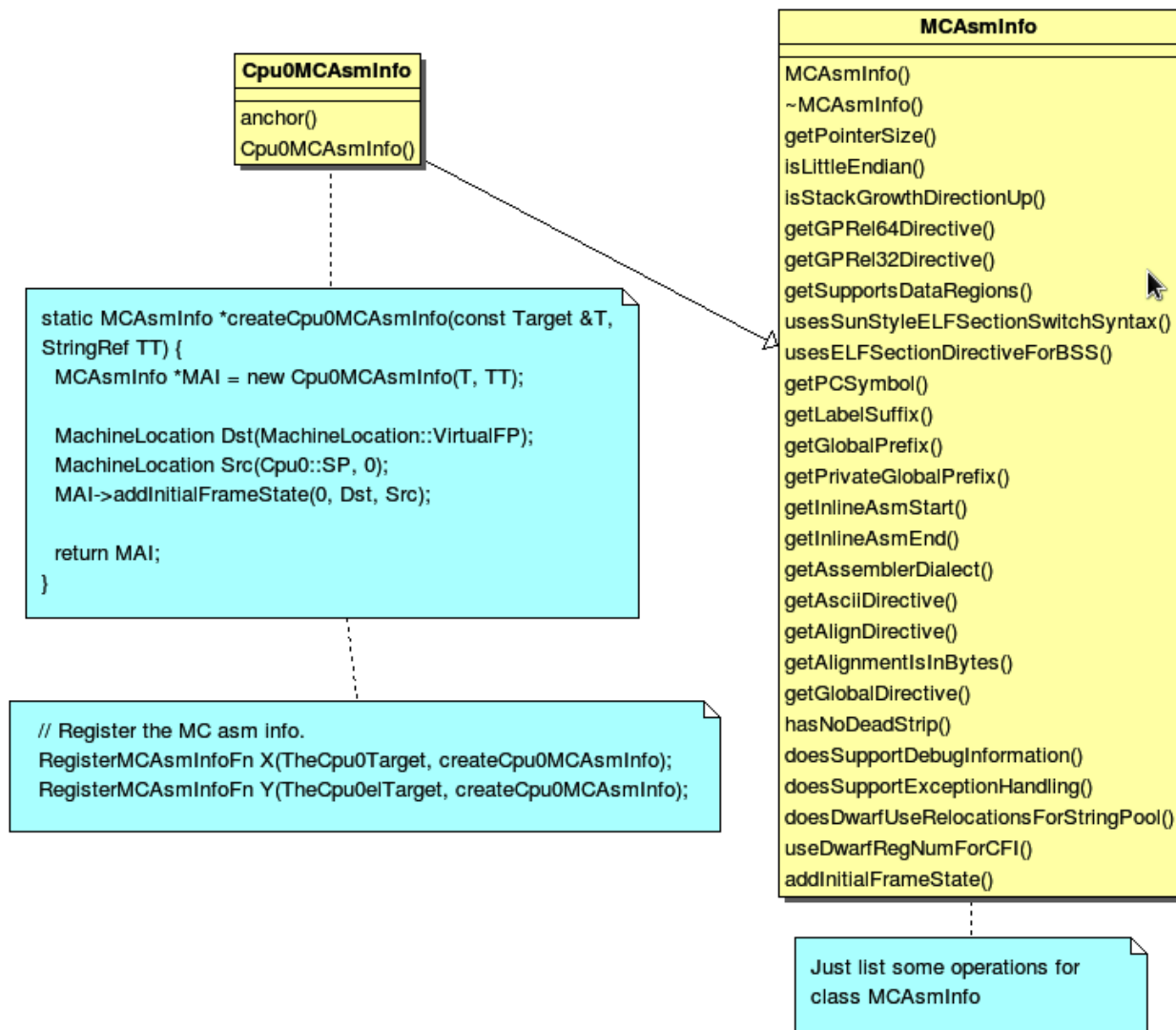


Figure 5.1: Register Cpu0MCAsmInfo

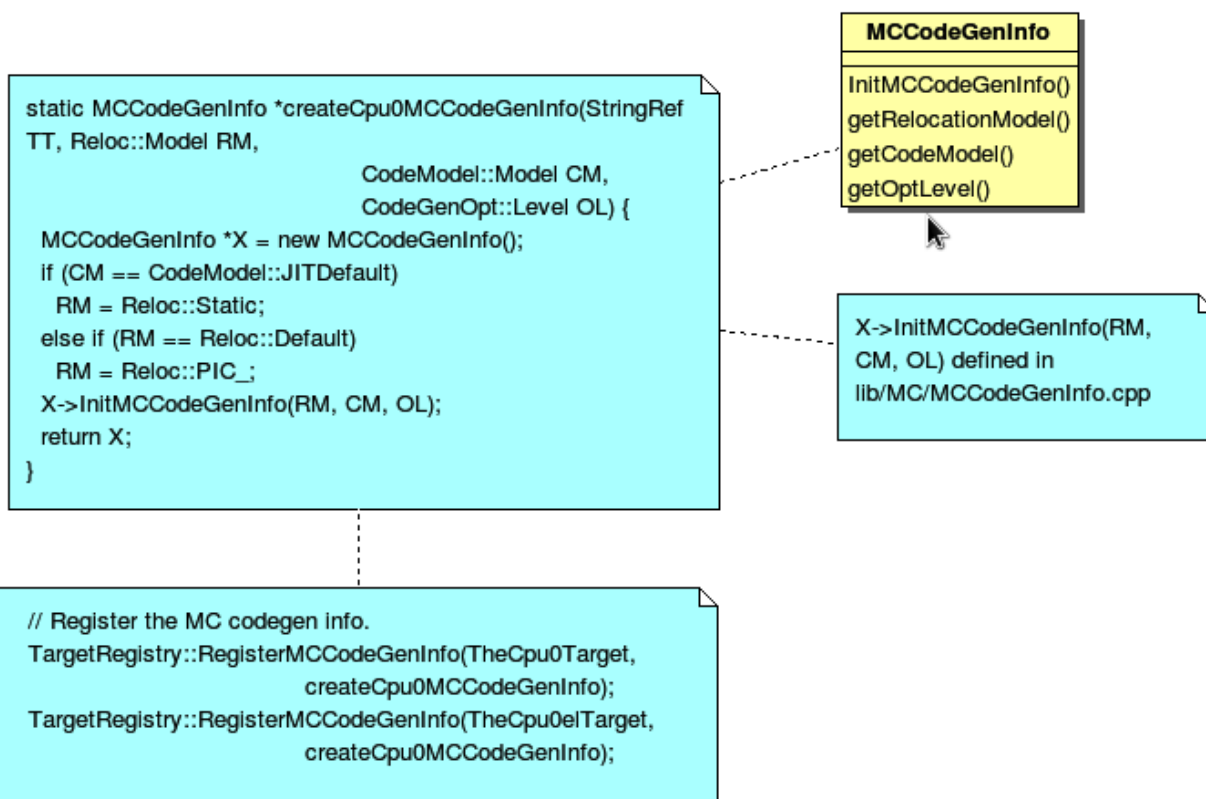


Figure 5.2: Register MCCodeGenInfo

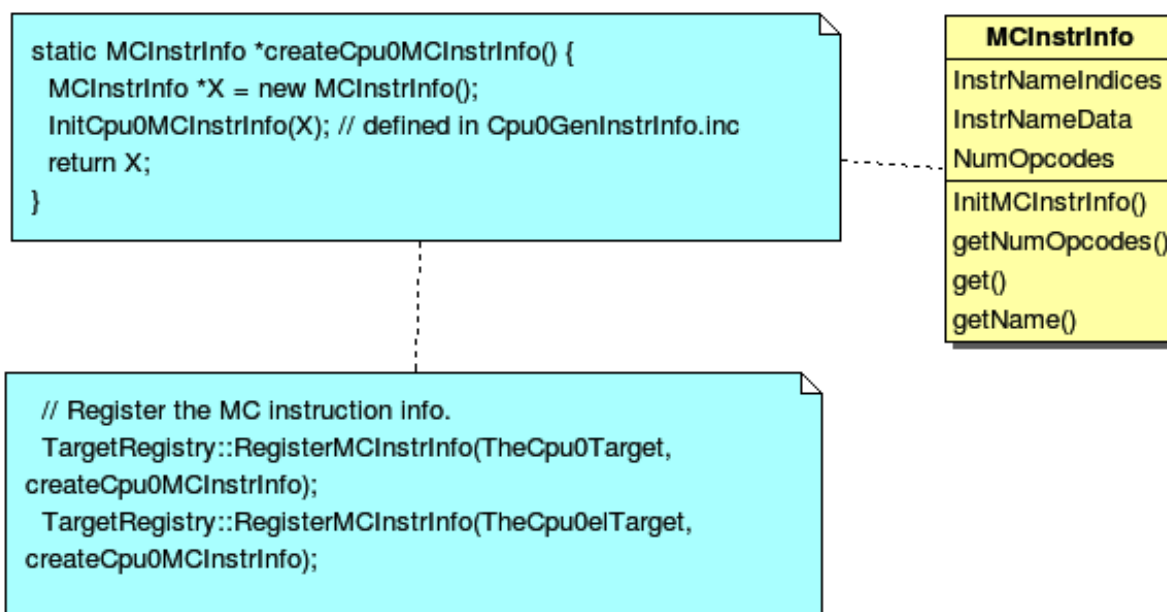


Figure 5.3: Register MCInstrInfo

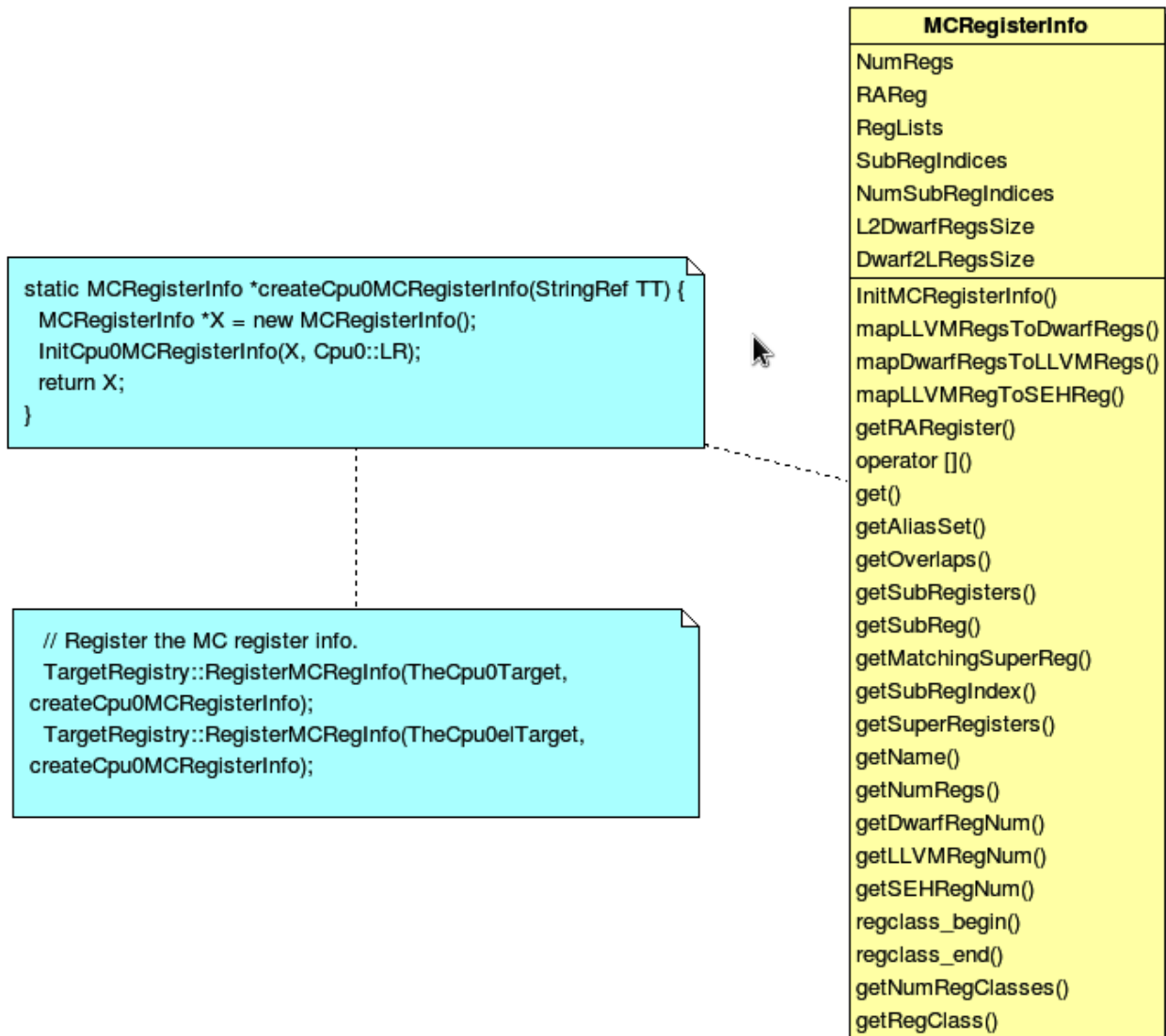


Figure 5.4: Register MCRegisterInfo

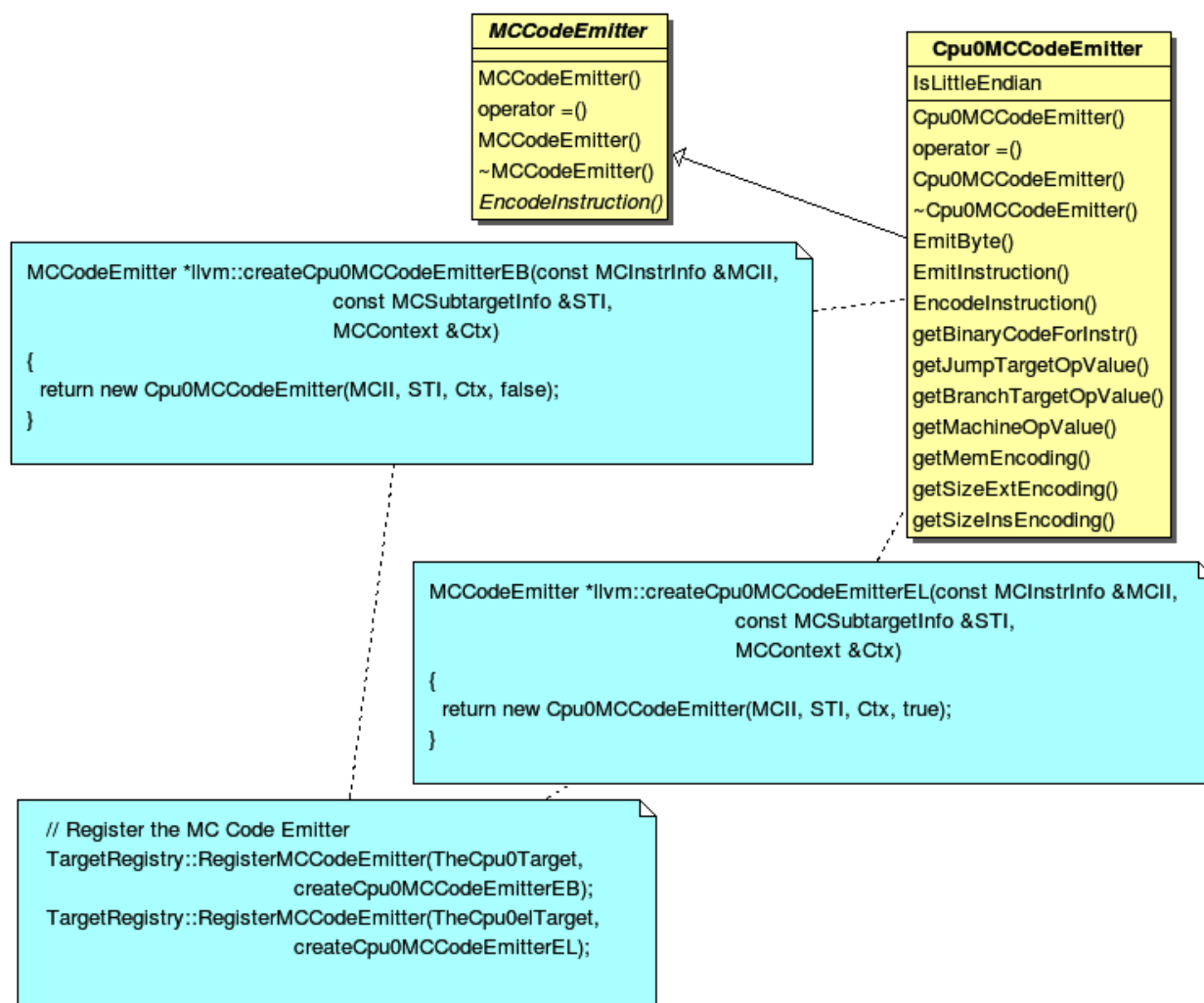


Figure 5.5: Register Cpu0MCCodeEmitter

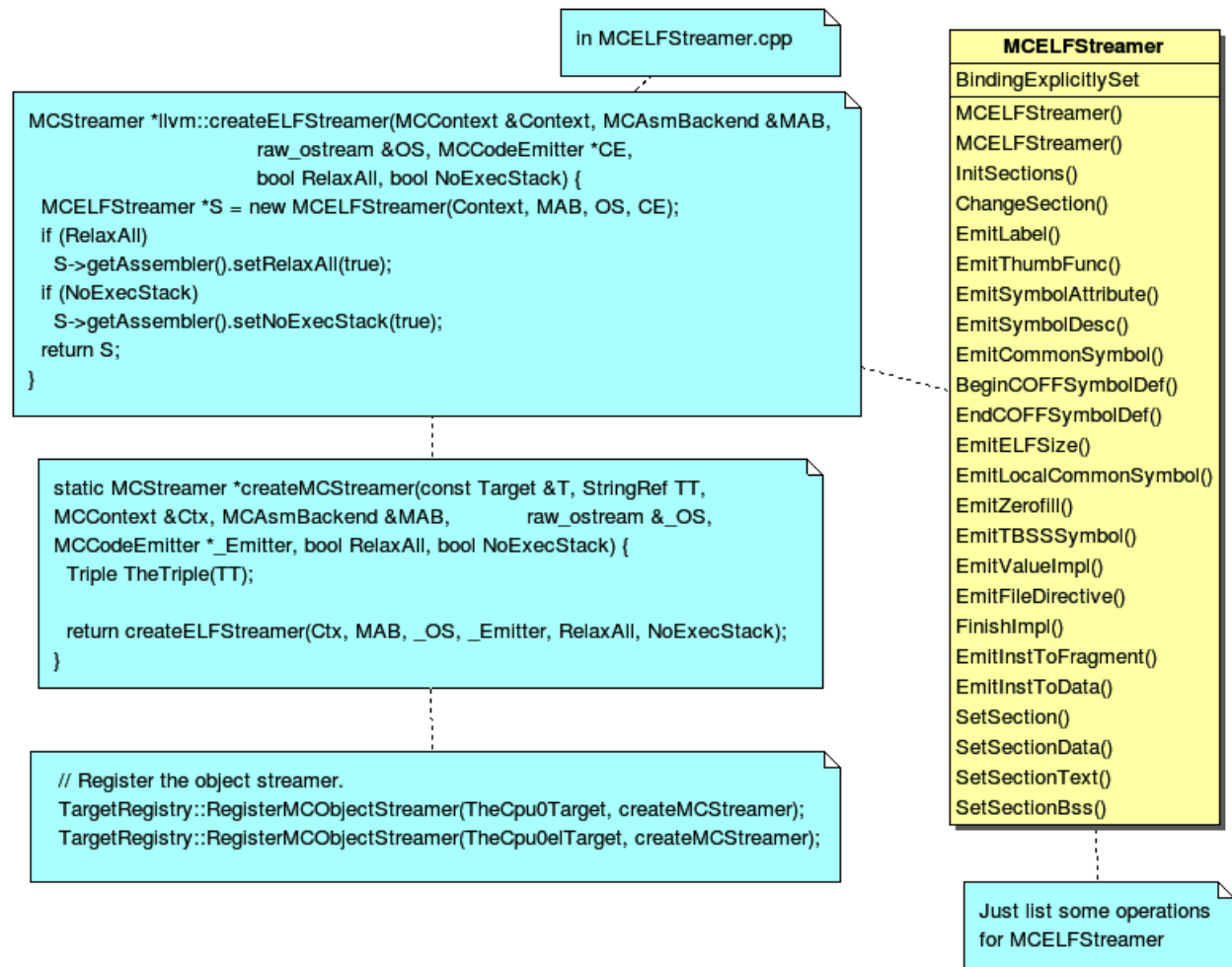


Figure 5.6: Register MCELFStreamer

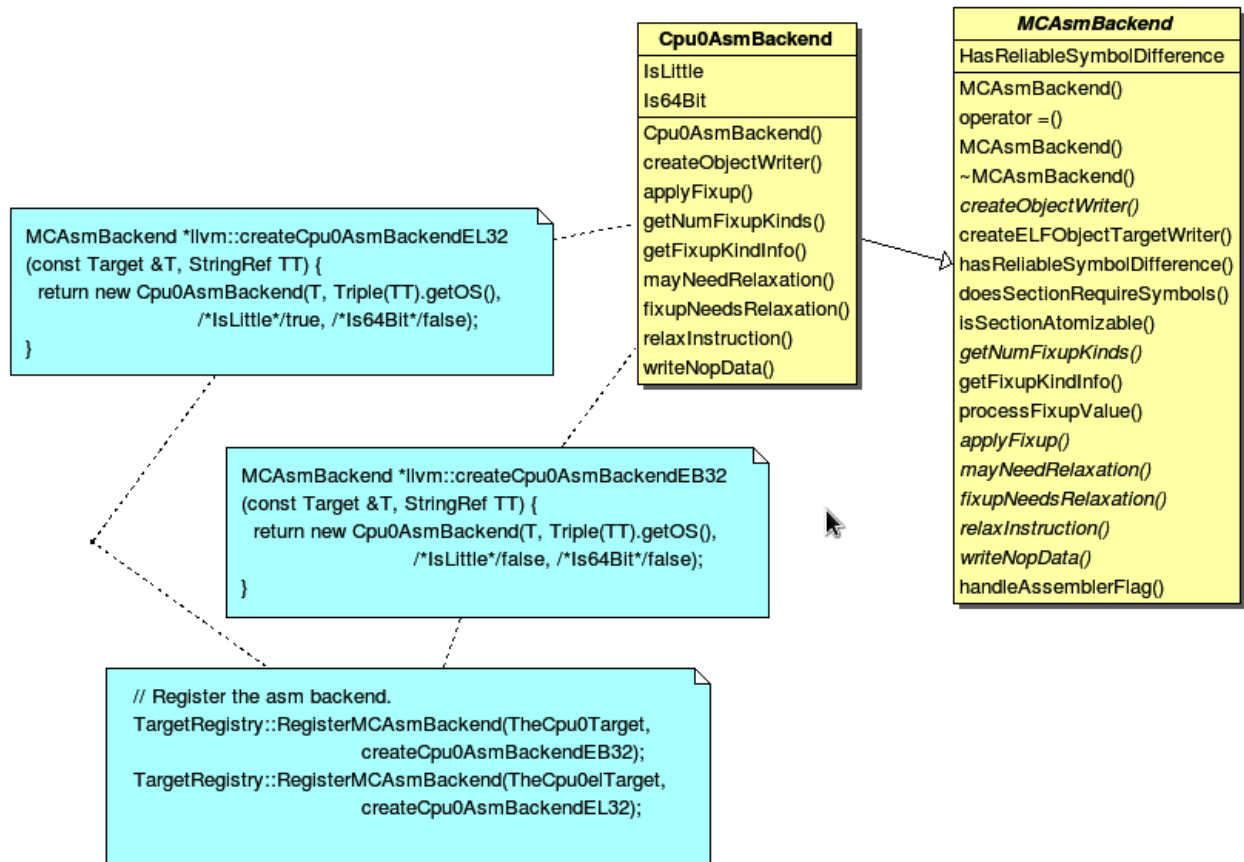


Figure 5.7: Register Cpu0AsmBackend

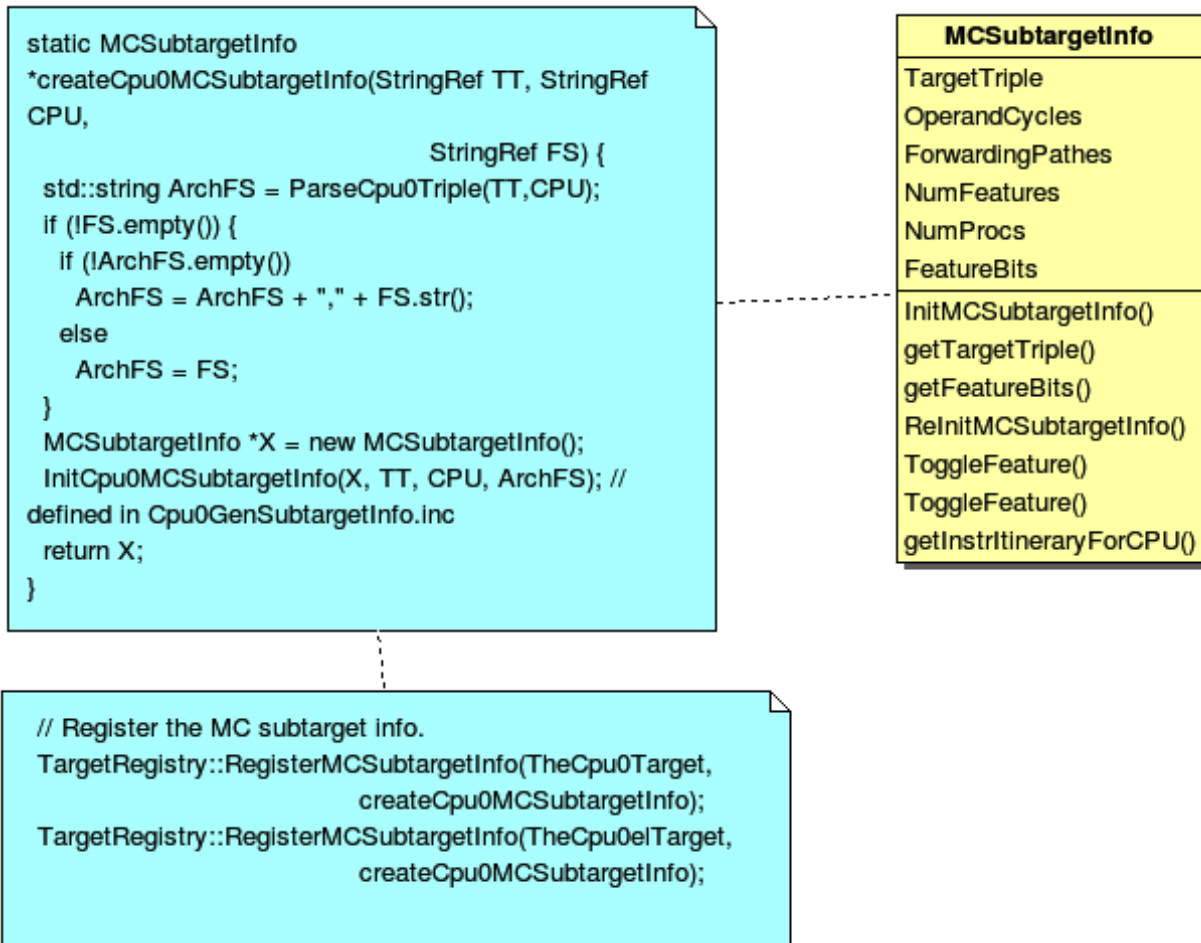


Figure 5.8: Register Cpu0MCSUBtargetInfo

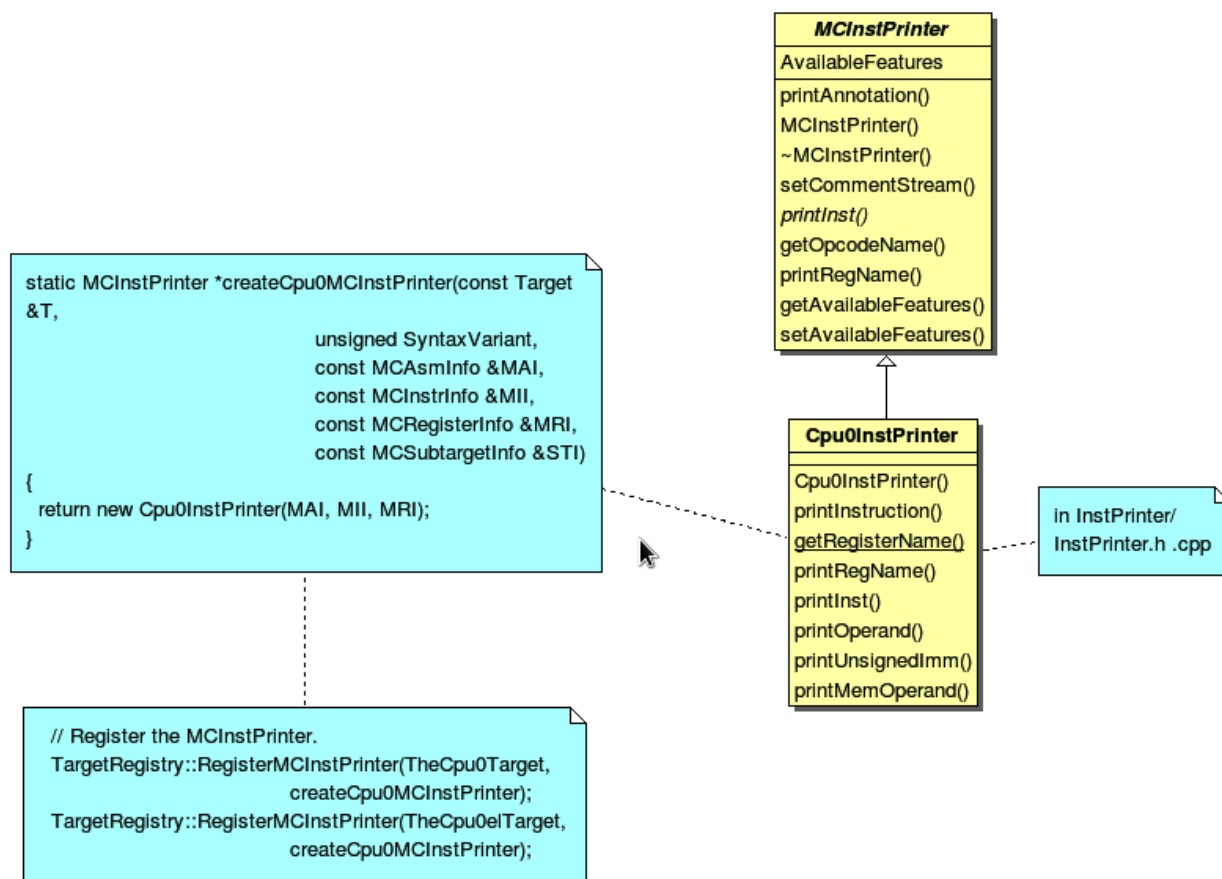


Figure 5.9: Register Cpu0InstPrinter



Figure 5.10: MCELFStreamer inherit tree

specified. *Register MCTargetInfo* is similar to *Register MCInstInfo*, but it initialize the register information specified in Cpu0RegisterInfo.td. They share a lot of code with instruction/register td description.

Register Cpu0MCCodeEmitter, instancing two objects Cpu0MCCodeEmitter, one is for big endian and the other is for little endian. They take care the obj format generated. So, it's not defined in 4/6_2/Cpu0 which support assembly code only.

Register MCELFStreamer, MCELFStreamer take care the obj format also. *Register Cpu0MCCodeEmitter* Cpu0MCCodeEmitter take care code emitter while MCELFStreamer take care the obj output streamer. *MCELFStreamer inherit tree* is MCELFStreamer inherit tree. You can find a lot of operations in that inherit tree.

Reader maybe has the question for what are the actual arguments in createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB(const MCInstInfo &MCII, const MCSubtargetInfo &STI, MCContext &Ctx) and at when they are assigned. Yes, we didn't assign it, we register the createXXX() function by function pointer only (according C, TargetRegistry::RegisterXXX(TheCpu0Target, createXXX()) where createXXX is function pointer). LLVM keep a function pointer to createXXX() when we call target registry, and will call these createXXX() function back at proper time with arguments assigned during the target registration process, RegisterXXX().

Register Cpu0AsmBackend, Cpu0AsmBackend class is the bridge for asm to obj. Two objects take care big endian and little endian also. It derived from MCAsmBackend. Most of code for object file generated is implemented by MCELFStreamer and it's parent, MCAsmBackend.

Register Cpu0MCSubtargetInfo, instancing MCSubtargetInfo object and initialize with Cpu0.td information. *Register Cpu0InstPrinter*, instancing Cpu0InstPrinter to take care printing function for instructions. Like *Register Cpu0MCAsmInfo* to *Register MCTargetInfo*, it has been defined in 4/6_2/Cpu0 code for assembly file generated support.

GLOBAL VARIABLE, STRUCT AND ARRAY

In the previous two chapters, we only access the local variables. This chapter will deal global variable access translation. After that, introducing the types of struct and array as well as their corresponding llvm IR statement, and how the cpu0 translate these llvm IR statements in [section Array and struct support](#).

The global variable DAG translation is different from the previous DAG translation we have now. It create DAG nodes at run time in our backend C++ code according the `llc -relocation-model` option while the others of DAG just do IR DAG to Machine DAG translation directly according the input file IR DAG.

6.1 Global variable

6/1/Cpu0 support the global variable, let's compile `ch6_1.cpp` with this version first, and explain the code changes after that.

```
// ch6_1.cpp
int gI = 100;
int main()
{
    int c = 0;

    c = gI;

    return c;
}
```

```
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.ll
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch6_1.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch6_1.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:64-
f32:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:
32:64-S128"
target triple = "x86_64-apple-macosx10.8.0"
```

```
@gI = global i32 100, align 4
```

```
define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable ssp {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    store i32 0, i32* %c, align 4
```

```
%2 = load i32* @gI, align 4
store i32 %2, i32* %c, align 4
%3 = load i32* %c, align 4
ret i32 %3
}

118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.s
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch6_1.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch6_1.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($sp)
st $2, 0($sp)
ld $2, %got(gI)($gp)
ld $2, 0($2)
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp2:
.size main, ($tmp2)-main
.cfi_endproc

.type gI,@object                        # @gI
.data
.globl gI
.align 2
gI:
.4byte 100                             # 0x64
.size gI, 4
```

As above code, it translate “load i32* @gI, align 4” into “ld \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp)” for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic, position-independent mode. More specifically, it translate the global integer variable gI address into offset of register gp and load from \$gp+(the offset) into register \$2.

6.1.1 Static mode

We can also translate it with absolute address mode by following command,

```
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.static.s
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch6_1.cpu0.static.s
...
addiu $2, $zero, %hi(gI)
shl $2, $2, 16
addiu $2, $2, %lo(gI)
ld $2, 0($2)
```

Above code, it loads the high address part of gI absolute address (16 bits) to register \$2 and shift 16 bits. Now, the register \$2 got it's high part of gI absolute address. Next, it loads the low part of gI absolute address into register 3. Finally, add register \$2 and \$3 into \$2, and loads the content of address \$2+offset 0 into register \$2. The `llc -relocation-model=static` is for static link mode which binding the address in static, compile/link time, not dynamic/run time. In this mode, you can also translate code with the following command,

```
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-islinux-f
ormat=false -filetype=asm ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.islinux-format-false.s
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch6_1.cpu0.islinux-format-false.s
...
st $2, 0($sp)
addiu $2, $gp, %gp_rel(gI)
ld $2, 0($2)
...
.section .sdata,"aw",@progbits
.globl gI
```

As above, it translate code with `llc -relocation-model=static -cpu0-islinux-format=false`. The `-cpu0-islinux-format` default is true which will allocate global variables in data section. With setting false, it will allocate global variables in sdata section. Section data and sdata are areas for global variable with initial value, int gI = 100 in this example. Section bss and sbss are areas for global variables without initial value (for example, int gI;). Allocate variables in sdata or sbss sections is addressable by 16 bits + \$gp. The static mode with `-cpu0-islinux-format=false` is still static mode (variable is binding in compile/link time) even it's use \$gp relative address. The \$gp content is assigned at compile/link time, changed only at program be loaded, and is fixed during running the program; while the `-relocation-model=pic` the \$gp can be changed during program running. For example, if \$gp is assigned to start of .sdata like this example, then `%gp_rel(gI)` = (the relative address distance between gI and \$gp) (is 0 in this case). When sdata is loaded into address x, then the gI variable can be got from address x+0 where x is the address stored in \$gp, 0 is the value of `$gp_rel(gI)`.

To support global variable, first add **IsLinuxOpt** command variable to `Cpu0Subtarget.cpp`. After that, user can run `llc` with argument `llc -cpu0-islinux-format=false` to specify **IsLinuxOpt** to false. The **IsLinuxOpt** is defaulted to true if without specify it. About the **cl** command variable, you can refer to ¹ further.

```
// Cpu0Subtarget.cpp
static cl::opt<bool>
IsLinuxOpt("cpu0-islinux-format", cl::Hidden, cl::init(true),
           cl::desc("Always use linux format."));
```

Next add the following code to `Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp`.

```
// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
Cpu0TargetLowering::
```

¹ <http://llvm.org/docs/CommandLine.html>

```
Cpu0TargetLowering(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM)
: TargetLowering(TM, new Cpu0TargetObjectFile()),
  Subtarget(&TM.getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()) {
    ...
    // Cpu0 Custom Operations
    setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress, MVT::i32, Custom);
    ...
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
        case ISD::GlobalAddress: return LowerGlobalAddress(Op, DAG);
    }
    return SDValue();
}

//=====//
// Lower helper functions
//=====//

//=====//
// Misc Lower Operation implementation
//=====//

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                                SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    // FIXME there isn't actually debug info here
    DebugLoc dl = Op.getDebugLoc();
    const GlobalValue *GV = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op)->getGlobal();

    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() != Reloc::PIC_) {
        SDVTList VTs = DAG.getVTList(MVT::i32);

        Cpu0TargetObjectFile &TLOF = (Cpu0TargetObjectFile&)getObjFileLowering();

        // %gp_rel relocation
        if (TLOF.IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine())) {
            SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                                    Cpu0II::MO_GPREL);
            SDValue GPRElNode = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::GPRel, dl, VTs, &GA, 1);
            SDValue GOT = DAG.getGLOBAL_OFFSET_TABLE(MVT::i32);
            return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, MVT::i32, GOT, GPRElNode);
        }
        // %hi/%lo relocation
        SDValue GAHi = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                                    Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
        SDValue GALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                                    Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
        SDValue HiPart = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, dl, VTs, &GAHi, 1);
        SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, dl, MVT::i32, GALo);
        return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, MVT::i32, HiPart, Lo);
    }

    EVT ValTy = Op.getValueType();
    bool HasGotOfst = (GV->hasInternalLinkage() ||
                      (GV->hasLocalLinkage() && !isa<Function>(GV)));
```



```

unsigned GotFlag = (HasGotOfst ? Cpu0II::MO_GOT : Cpu0II::MO_GOT16);
SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, ValTy, 0, GotFlag);
GA = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, dl, ValTy, GetGlobalReg(DAG, ValTy), GA);
SDValue ResNode = DAG.getLoad(ValTy, dl, DAG.getEntryNode(), GA,
                             MachinePointerInfo(), false, false, false, 0);
// On functions and global targets not internal linked only
// a load from got/GP is necessary for PIC to work.
if (!HasGotOfst)
    return ResNode;
SDValue GALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, ValTy, 0,
                                           Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, dl, ValTy, GALo);
return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, ValTy, ResNode, Lo);
}

```

The `setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress, MVT::i32, Custom)` tells `llc` that we implement global address operation in C++ function `Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerOperation()` and `llvm` will call this function only when `llvm` want to translate IR DAG of loading global variable into machine code. Since may have many Custom type of `setOperationAction(ISD::XXX, MVT::XXX, Custom)` in construction function `Cpu0TargetLowering()`, and `llvm` will call `Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerOperation()` for each ISD IR DAG node of Custom type translation. The global address access can be identified by check the DAG node of opcode is `ISD::GlobalAddress`. For static mode, `LowerGlobalAddress()` will check the translation is for `IsGlobalInSmallSection()` or not. When `IsLinuxOpt` is true and static mode, `IsGlobalInSmallSection()` always return false. `LowerGlobalAddress()` will translate global variable by create 2 DAG IR nodes `ABS_HI` and `ABS_LO` for high part and low part of address and one extra node `ADD`. List it again as follows.

```

// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
...
// %hi/%lo relocation
SDValue GAHi = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                           Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
SDValue GALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                           Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
SDValue HiPart = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, dl, VTs, &GAHi, 1);
SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, dl, MVT::i32, GALo);
return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, MVT::i32, HiPart, Lo);

```

The DAG list form for these three DAG nodes as above code created can be represented as `(ADD (Hi(h1, h2), Lo (l1, l2)))`. Since some DAG nodes are not with two arguments, we will define the list as `(ADD (Hi (...), Lo (...))` or `(ADD (Hi, Lo))` sometimes in this book. The corresponding machine instructions of these three IR nodes are defined in `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` as follows,

```

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
// Hi and Lo nodes are used to handle global addresses. Used on
// Cpu0ISelLowering to lower stuff like GlobalAddress, ExternalSymbol
// static model. (nothing to do with Cpu0 Registers Hi and Lo)
def Cpu0Hi      : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Hi", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
def Cpu0Lo      : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Lo", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
...
// hi/lo relocs
def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (SHL (ADDiu ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in), 16)>;
// Expect cpu0 add LUI support, like Mips
//def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (LUI tglobaladdr:$in)>;
def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$in), (ADDiu ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in)>;

def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$lo)),
        (ADDiu CPURegs:$hi, tglobaladdr:$lo)>;

// gp_rel relocs

```

```
def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$gp, (Cpu0GPREl tglobaladdr:$in)),
      (ADDiu CPURegs:$gp, tglobaladdr:$in)>;
```

Above code meaning translate ABS_HI into ADDiu and SHL two instructions. Remember the DAG and Instruction Selection introduced in chapter “Back end structure”, DAG list (SHL (ADDiu ...), 16) meaning DAG node ADDiu and it's parent DAG node SHL two instructions nodes is for list IR DAG ABS_HI. The Pat<> has two list DAG representation. The left is IR DAG and the right is machine instruction DAG. So after Instruction Selection and Register Allocation, it translate ABS_HI to,

```
addiu $2, %hi(gI)
shl $2, $2, 16
```

According above code, we know llvm allocate register \$2 for the output operand of ADDiu instruction and \$2 for SHL instruction in this example. Since (SHL (ADDiu), 16), the ADDiu output result will be the SHL first register. The result is “**shl \$2, 16**”. Above Pat<> also define DAG list (add \$hi, (ABS_LO)) will be translated into (ADD \$hi, (ADDiu ZERO, ...)) where ADD is machine instruction **add** and ADDiu is machine instruction **ldi** which defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td too. Remember (add \$hi, (ABS_LO)) meaning add DAG has two operands, the first is \$hi and the second is the register which the ABS_LO output result register save to. So, the IR DAG pattern and it's corresponding machine instruction node as follows,

```
addiu $3, %lo(gI) // def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$in), (ADDiu ZERO,
// tglobaladdr:$in)>;

// def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$lo)), (ADD CPURegs:$hi,
// (LDI ZERO, tglobaladdr:$lo))>;
// So, the second register for add is the output register of ABS_LO IR DAG
// translation result saved to;
// Since LowerGlobalAddress() create list (ADD (Hi, Lo)) with 3 DAG nodes,
// the Hi output register $2 will be the first input register for add.
add $2, $2, $3
```

After translated as above, the register \$2 is the global variable address, so get the global variable by IR DAG load will translate into machine instruction as follows,

```
%2 = load i32* @gI, align 4
=> ld $2, 0($2)
```

When IsLinuxOpt is false and static mode, LowerGlobalAddress() will run the following code to create a DAG list (ADD GOT, GPRel).

```
// %gp_rel relocation
if (TLOF.IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine())) {
    SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                             Cpu0II::MO_GPREL);
    SDValue GPRelNode = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::GPREl, dl, VTs, &GA, 1);
    SDValue GOT = DAG.getGLOBAL_OFFSET_TABLE(MVT::i32);
    return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, MVT::i32, GOT, GPRelNode);
}
```

As mentioned just before, all global variables allocated in sdata or sbss sections which is addressable by 16 bits + \$gp in compile/link time (address binding in compile time). It's equal to offset+GOT where GOT is the base address for global variable and offset is 16 bits. Now, according the following Cpu0InstrInfo.td definition,

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
def Cpu0GPREl : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::GPREl", SDIntUnaryOp>;
...
// gp_rel relocs
def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$gp, (Cpu0GPREl tglobaladdr:$in)),
      (ADD CPURegs:$gp, (ADDiu ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in))>;
```

It translate global variable address of list (ADD GOT, GPRel) into machine instructions as follows,

```
addiu $2, $gp, %gp_rel(gI)
```

6.1.2 PIC mode

When PIC mode, LowerGlobalAddress() will create the DAG list (load DAG.getEntryNode(), (Wrapper GetGlobalReg(), GA)) by the following code and the code in Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp as follows,

```
bool HasGotOfst = (GV->hasInternalLinkage() ||
                  (GV->hasLocalLinkage() && !isa<Function>(GV)));
unsigned GotFlag = (HasGotOfst ? Cpu0II::MO_GOT : Cpu0II::MO_GOT16);
SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, ValTy, 0, GotFlag);
GA = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, dl, ValTy, GetGlobalReg(DAG, ValTy), GA);
SDValue ResNode = DAG.getLoad(ValTy, dl, DAG.getEntryNode(), GA,
                              MachinePointerInfo(), false, false, false, 0);
// On functions and global targets not internal linked only
// a load from got/GP is necessary for PIC to work.
if (!HasGotOfst)
    return ResNode;

// Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp
// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo
// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {
    ...
    // on PIC code Load GA
    if (Addr.getOpcode() == Cpu0ISD::Wrapper) {
        Base = Addr.getOperand(0);
        Offset = Addr.getOperand(1);
        return true;
    }
    ...
}
```

Then it translate into the following code,

```
ld $2, %got(gI)($gp)
```

Where DAG.getEntryNode() is the register \$2 which decided by Register Allocator ; DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, dl, ValTy, GetGlobalReg(DAG, ValTy), GA) is translated into Base=\$gp as well as the 16 bits Offset for \$gp.

Apart from above code, add the following code to Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp and it will emit .cpload asm pseudo instruction,

```
// Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp
// EmitFunctionBodyStart - Targets can override this to emit stuff before
// the first basic block in the function.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionBodyStart() {
    ...
    // Emit .cpload directive if needed.
    if (EmitCPLoad)
        // - .cpload $t9
        OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.cpload\t$t9"));
    ...
}
```

```
}

// ch6_1.cpu0.s
    .cpload $t9
    .set      nomacro
# BB#0:
    ldi $sp, -8
```

According Mips Application Binary Interface (ABI), \$t9 (\$25) is the register used in jalr \$25 for long distance function pointer (far subroutine call). The jal %subroutine has 24 bits range of address offset relative to Program Counter (PC) while jalr has 32 bits address range in register size is 32 bits. One example of PIC mode is used in share library. Share library is re-entry code which can be loaded in different memory address decided on run time. The static mode (absolute address mode) is usually designed to load in specific memory address decided on compile time. Since share library can be loaded in different memory address, the global variable address cannot be decided in compile time. As above, the global variable address is translated into the relative address of \$gp. In example code ch6_1.ll, .cpload is a asm pseudo instruction just before the first instruction of main(), ldi. When the share library main() function be loaded, the loader will assign the \$t9 value to \$gp when it meet “.cpload \$t9”. After that, the \$gp value is \$9 which point to main(), and the global variable address is the relative address to main().

6.1.3 Global variable print support

Above code is for global address DAG translation. Next, add the following code to Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp and Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp for global variable printing operand function.

```
// Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp
MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                                MachineOperandType MOTy,
                                                unsigned Offset) const {

    MCSymbolRefExpr::VariantKind Kind;
    const MCSymbol *Symbol;

    switch (MO.getTargetFlags()) {
    default:                llvm_unreachable("Invalid target flag!");
    // Cpu0_GPREL is for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static
    // -cpu0-islinux-format=false (global var in .sdata)
    case Cpu0II::MO_GPREL:  Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GPREL; break;

    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT16:  Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT16; break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT:    Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT; break;
    // ABS_HI and ABS_LO is for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static
    // (global var in .data)
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI: Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI; break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO: Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO; break;
    }

    switch (MOTy) {
    case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
        Symbol = Mang->getSymbol(MO.getGlobal());
        break;

    default:
        llvm_unreachable("<unknown operand type>");
    }
    ...
}
```

```

MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO,
                                         unsigned offset) const {
    MachineOperandType MOTy = MO.getType();

    switch (MOTy) {
        ...
        case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
            return LowerSymbolOperand(MO, MOTy, offset);
        ...
    }

// Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp
...
static void printExpr(const MCEExpr *Expr, raw_ostream &OS) {
    ...
    switch (Kind) {
        default:
            llvm_unreachable("Invalid kind!");
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None:
            break;
// Cpu0_GPREL is for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GPREL:
            OS << "%gp_rel("; break;
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT16:
            OS << "%got("; break;
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT:
            OS << "%got("; break;
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI:
            OS << "%hi("; break;
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO:
            OS << "%lo("; break;
    }
    ...
}

```

OS is the output stream which output to the assembly file.

6.1.4 Summary

The global variable Instruction Selection for DAG translation is not like the ordinary IR node translation, it has static (absolute address) and PIC mode. Backend deal this translation by create DAG nodes in function LowerGlobalAddress() which called by LowerOperation(). Function LowerOperation() take care all Custom type of operation. Backend set global address as Custom operation by "setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress, MVT::i32, Custom);" in Cpu0TargetLowering() constructor. Different address mode has it's corresponding DAG list be created. By set the pattern Pat<> in Cpu0InstrInfo.td, the llvm can apply the compiler mechanism, pattern match, in the Instruction Selection stage.

There are three type for setXXXAction(), Promote, Expand and Custom. Except Custom, the other two usually no need to coding. The section "Instruction Selector" of ² is the references.

6.2 Array and struct support

Shifting our work to iMac at this point. The Linux platform is fine. The reason we do the shift is for new platform using experience.

LLVM use getelementptr to represent the array and struct type in C. Please reference section getelementptr of ³. For ch6_2.cpp, the llvm IR as follows,

² <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBackend.html>

³ <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html>

```
// ch6_2.cpp
struct Date
{
    int year;
    int month;
    int day;
};

Date date = {2012, 10, 12};
int a[3] = {2012, 10, 12};

int main()
{
    int day = date.day;
    int i = a[1];

    return 0;
}

// ch6_2.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch6_2.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:32:32:32-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:32:64-
f32:32:32-f64:32:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32-S128"
target triple = "i386-apple-macosx10.8.0"

%struct.Date = type { i32, i32, i32 }

@date = global %struct.Date { i32 2012, i32 10, i32 12 }, align 4
@a = global [3 x i32] [i32 2012, i32 10, i32 12], align 4

define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
    %retval = alloca i32, align 4
    %day = alloca i32, align 4
    %i = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %retval
    %0 = load i32* getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2),
    align 4
    store i32 %0, i32* %day, align 4
    %1 = load i32* getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1), align 4
    store i32 %1, i32* %i, align 4
    ret i32 0
}
```

Run 6/1/Cpu0 with ch6_2.bc on static mode will get the incorrect asm file as follows,

```
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_
debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch6_2.bc -o ch6_2.cpu0.static.s
118-165-66-82:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch6_2.cpu0.static.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch6_2.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
```

```

.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, %hi(date)
shl $2, $2, 16
addiu $2, $2, %lo(date)
ld $2, 0($2) // the correct one is ld $2, 8($2)
st $2, 8($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, %hi(a)
shl $2, $2, 16
addiu $2, $2, %lo(a)
ld $2, 0($2)
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp2:
.size main, ($tmp2)-main
.cfi_endproc

.type date,@object # @date
.data
.globl date
.align 2
date:
.4byte 2012 # 0x7dc
.4byte 10 # 0xa
.4byte 12 # 0xc
.size date, 12

.type a,@object # @a
.globl a
.align 2
a:
.4byte 2012 # 0x7dc
.4byte 10 # 0xa
.4byte 12 # 0xc
.size a, 12

```

For “**day = date.day**”, the correct one is “**ld \$2, 8(\$2)**”, not “**ld \$2, 0(\$2)**”, since `date.day` is offset 8(`date`). Type `int` is 4 bytes in `cpu0`, and the `date.day` has fields `year` and `month` before it. Let use debug option in `llc` to see what’s wrong,

```

jonathantekiimac:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -debug -relocation-model=static
-filetype=asm ch6_2.bc -o ch6_2.cpu0.static.s
...
=== main
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'

```

SelectionDAG has 20 nodes:

```
0x7f7f5b02d210: i32 = undef [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d010: i32 = Constant<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d110: i32 = FrameIndex<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d310: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d310: ch = store 0x7f7f5b02d010, 0x7f7f5b02d110, 0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%retval]> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d410: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> 0 [ORD=2]

0x7f7f5b02d510: i32 = Constant<8> [ORD=2]

0x7f7f5b02d610: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02d410, 0x7f7f5b02d510 [ORD=2]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: i32,ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d310, 0x7f7f5b02d610, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2)]> [ORD=3]

0x7f7f5b02db10: i64 = Constant<4>

0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d810: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d910: ch = store 0x7f7f5b02d710:1, 0x7f7f5b02d710, 0x7f7f5b02d810,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%day]> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b02da10: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> 0 [ORD=5]

0x7f7f5b02dc10: i32 = Constant<4> [ORD=5]

0x7f7f5b02dd10: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02da10, 0x7f7f5b02dc10 [ORD=5]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02de10: i32,ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d910, 0x7f7f5b02dd10, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1)]> [ORD=6]
```

...

Replacing.3 0x7f7f5b02dd10: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02da10, 0x7f7f5b02dc10 [ORD=5]

With: 0x7f7f5b030010: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> + 4

Replacing.3 0x7f7f5b02d610: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02d410, 0x7f7f5b02d510 [ORD=2]

With: 0x7f7f5b02db10: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8

Optimized lowered selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'

SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:

```
0x7f7f5b02d210: i32 = undef [ORD=1]
```



```

0x7f7f5ac10590: ch = EntryToken [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d010: i32 = Constant<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d110: i32 = FrameIndex<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d310: ch = store 0x7f7f5ac10590, 0x7f7f5b02d010, 0x7f7f5b02d110,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%retval]> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02db10: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: i32,ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d310, 0x7f7f5b02db10, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2)]> [ORD=3]

0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d810: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d910: ch = store 0x7f7f5b02d710:1, 0x7f7f5b02d710, 0x7f7f5b02d810,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%day]> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b030010: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> + 4

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02de10: i32,ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d910, 0x7f7f5b030010, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1)]> [ORD=6]

...

```

By `llc -debug`, you can see the DAG translation process. As above, the DAG list for `date.day` (add `GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> + 0, Constant<8>`) with 3 nodes is replaced by 1 node `GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8`. The DAG list for `a[1]` is same. The replacement occurs since `TargetLowering.cpp::isOffsetFoldingLegal(...)` return true in `llc -static` static addressing mode as below. In Cpu0 the `ld` instruction format is “`ld $r1, offset($r2)`” which meaning load `$r2` address+offset to `$r1`. So, we just replace the `isOffsetFoldingLegal(...)` function by override mechanism as below.

```

// TargetLowering.cpp
bool
TargetLowering::isOffsetFoldingLegal(const GlobalAddressSDNode *GA) const {
    // Assume that everything is safe in static mode.
    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::Static)
        return true;

    // In dynamic-no-pic mode, assume that known defined values are safe.
    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::DynamicNoPIC &&
        GA &&
        !GA->getGlobal()->isDeclaration() &&
        !GA->getGlobal()->isWeakForLinker())
        return true;

    // Otherwise assume nothing is safe.
    return false;
}

// Cpu0TargetLowering.cpp

```

```
bool
Cpu0TargetLowering::isOffsetFoldingLegal(const GlobalAddressSDNode *GA) const {
    // The Cpu0 target isn't yet aware of offsets.
    return false;
}
```

Beyond that, we need to add the following code fragment to Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp,

```
// Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp
/// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo
/// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {
    ...
    // Addresses of the form FI+const or FI|const
    if (CurDAG->isBaseWithConstantOffset(Addr)) {
        ConstantSDNode *CN = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Addr.getOperand(1));
        if (isInt<16>(CN->getSExtValue())) {

            // If the first operand is a FI, get the TargetFI Node
            if (FrameIndexSDNode *FIN = dyn_cast<FrameIndexSDNode>
                (Addr.getOperand(0)))
                Base = CurDAG->getTargetFrameIndex(FIN->getIndex(), ValTy);
            else
                Base = Addr.getOperand(0);

            Offset = CurDAG->getTargetConstant(CN->getZExtValue(), ValTy);
            return true;
        }
    }
}
```

Recall we have translated DAG list for `date.day` (`add GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> 0, Constant<8>`) into (`add (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO)), Constant<8>`) by the following code in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

```
// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                                SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    ...
    // %hi/%lo relocation
    SDValue GAHi = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                              Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
    SDValue GALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, dl, MVT::i32, 0,
                                              Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
    SDValue HiPart = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, dl, VTs, &GAHi, 1);
    SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, dl, MVT::i32, GALo);
    return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, MVT::i32, HiPart, Lo);
    ...
}
```

So, when the `SelectAddr(...)` of `Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp` is called. The `Addr` `SDValue` in `SelectAddr(..., Addr, ...)` is DAG list for `date.day` (`add (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO)), Constant<8>`). Since `Addr.getOpcode() = ISD::ADD`, `Addr.getOperand(0) = (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO))` and `Addr.getOperand(1).getOpcode() = ISD::Constant`, the `Base = SDValue (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO))` and `Offset = Constant<8>`. After set `Base` and `Offset`, the load DAG will translate the global address `date.day` into machine instruction “**ld \$r1, 8(\$r2)**” in Instruction Selection stage.

6/2/Cpu0 include these changes as above, you can run it with ch6_2.cpp to get the correct generated instruction “**ld \$r1, 8(\$r2)**” for date.day access, as follows.

```
...  
ld  $2, 8($2)  
st  $2, 8($sp)  
addiu $2, $zero, %hi(a)  
shl  $2, $2, 16  
addiu $2, $2, %lo(a)  
ld  $2, 4($2)
```


CONTROL FLOW STATEMENT

This chapter illustrates the corresponding IR for control flow statements, like “if else”, “while” and “for” loop statements in C, and how to translate these control flow statements of llvm IR into cpu0 instructions.

7.1 Control flow statement

Run ch7_1_1.cpp with clang will get result as follows,

```
// ch7_1_1.cpp
int main()
{
    unsigned int a = 0;
    int b = 1;
    int c = 2;
    int d = 3;
    int e = 4;
    int f = 5;
    int g = 6;
    int h = 7;
    int i = 8;

    if (a == 0) {
        a++;
    }
    if (b != 0) {
        b++;
    }
    if (c > 0) {
        c++;
    }
    if (d >= 0) {
        d++;
    }
    if (e < 0) {
        e++;
    }
    if (f <= 0) {
        f++;
    }
    if (g <= 1) {
        g++;
    }
}
```

```
    if (h >= 1) {
        h++;
    }
    if (i < h) {
        i++;
    }
    if (a != b) {
        a++;
    }

    return a;
}

; ModuleID = 'ch7_1_1.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:32:32:32-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:32:64-
f32:32:32-f64:32:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32-S128"
target triple = "i386-apple-macosx10.8.0"

define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
    %retval = alloca i32, align 4
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    %d = alloca i32, align 4
    %e = alloca i32, align 4
    %f = alloca i32, align 4
    %g = alloca i32, align 4
    %h = alloca i32, align 4
    %i = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %retval
    store i32 0, i32* %a, align 4
    store i32 1, i32* %b, align 4
    store i32 2, i32* %c, align 4
    store i32 3, i32* %d, align 4
    store i32 4, i32* %e, align 4
    store i32 5, i32* %f, align 4
    store i32 6, i32* %g, align 4
    store i32 7, i32* %h, align 4
    store i32 8, i32* %i, align 4
    %0 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, 0
    br i1 %cmp, label %if.then, label %if.end

if.then:                                ; preds = %entry
    %1 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %inc = add i32 %1, 1
    store i32 %inc, i32* %a, align 4
    br label %if.end

if.end:                                ; preds = %if.then, %entry
    %2 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %cmp1 = icmp ne i32 %2, 0
    br i1 %cmp1, label %if.then2, label %if.end4

if.then2:                              ; preds = %if.end
    %3 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %inc3 = add nsw i32 %3, 1
```

```

store i32 %inc3, i32* %b, align 4
br label %if.end4

if.end4:                                ; preds = %if.then2, %if.end
    %4 = load i32* %c, align 4
    %cmp5 = icmp sgt i32 %4, 0
    br i1 %cmp5, label %if.then6, label %if.end8

if.then6:                                ; preds = %if.end4
    %5 = load i32* %c, align 4
    %inc7 = add nsw i32 %5, 1
    store i32 %inc7, i32* %c, align 4
    br label %if.end8

if.end8:                                ; preds = %if.then6, %if.end4
    %6 = load i32* %d, align 4
    %cmp9 = icmp sge i32 %6, 0
    br i1 %cmp9, label %if.then10, label %if.end12

if.then10:                               ; preds = %if.end8
    %7 = load i32* %d, align 4
    %inc11 = add nsw i32 %7, 1
    store i32 %inc11, i32* %d, align 4
    br label %if.end12

if.end12:                                ; preds = %if.then10, %if.end8
    %8 = load i32* %e, align 4
    %cmp13 = icmp slt i32 %8, 0
    br i1 %cmp13, label %if.then14, label %if.end16

if.then14:                               ; preds = %if.end12
    %9 = load i32* %e, align 4
    %inc15 = add nsw i32 %9, 1
    store i32 %inc15, i32* %e, align 4
    br label %if.end16

if.end16:                                ; preds = %if.then14, %if.end12
    %10 = load i32* %f, align 4
    %cmp17 = icmp sle i32 %10, 0
    br i1 %cmp17, label %if.then18, label %if.end20

if.then18:                               ; preds = %if.end16
    %11 = load i32* %f, align 4
    %inc19 = add nsw i32 %11, 1
    store i32 %inc19, i32* %f, align 4
    br label %if.end20

if.end20:                                ; preds = %if.then18, %if.end16
    %12 = load i32* %g, align 4
    %cmp21 = icmp sle i32 %12, 1
    br i1 %cmp21, label %if.then22, label %if.end24

if.then22:                               ; preds = %if.end20
    %13 = load i32* %g, align 4
    %inc23 = add nsw i32 %13, 1
    store i32 %inc23, i32* %g, align 4
    br label %if.end24

```

```

if.end24:                                ; preds = %if.then22, %if.end20
    %14 = load i32* %h, align 4
    %cmp25 = icmp sge i32 %14, 1
    br i1 %cmp25, label %if.then26, label %if.end28

if.then26:                                ; preds = %if.end24
    %15 = load i32* %h, align 4
    %inc27 = add nsw i32 %15, 1
    store i32 %inc27, i32* %h, align 4
    br label %if.end28

if.end28:                                ; preds = %if.then26, %if.end24
    %16 = load i32* %i, align 4
    %17 = load i32* %h, align 4
    %cmp29 = icmp slt i32 %16, %17
    br i1 %cmp29, label %if.then30, label %if.end32

if.then30:                                ; preds = %if.end28
    %18 = load i32* %i, align 4
    %inc31 = add nsw i32 %18, 1
    store i32 %inc31, i32* %i, align 4
    br label %if.end32

if.end32:                                ; preds = %if.then30, %if.end28
    %19 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %20 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %cmp33 = icmp ne i32 %19, %20
    br i1 %cmp33, label %if.then34, label %if.end36

if.then34:                                ; preds = %if.end32
    %21 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %inc35 = add i32 %21, 1
    store i32 %inc35, i32* %a, align 4
    br label %if.end36

if.end36:                                ; preds = %if.then34, %if.end32
    %22 = load i32* %a, align 4
    ret i32 %22
}

```

The “**icmp ne**” stand for integer compare NotEqual, “**slt**” stand for Set Less Than, “**sle**” stand for Set Less Equal. Run version 6/2/Cpu0 with `llc -view-isel-dags` or `-debug` option, you can see it has translated **if** statement into `(br (brcond (%1, setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)), BasicBlock_02), BasicBlock_01)`. Ignore %1, we get the form `(br (brcond (setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)), BasicBlock_02), BasicBlock_01)`. For explanation, We list the IR DAG as follows,

```

%cond=setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)
brcond %cond, BasicBlock_02
br BasicBlock_01

```

We want to translate them into cpu0 instructions DAG as follows,

```

addiu %3, ZERO, Constant<c>
cmp %2, %3
jne BasicBlock_02
jmp BasicBlock_01

```

For the first `addiu` instruction as above which move `Constant<c>` into register, we have defined it before by the following code,


```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
// Small immediates
def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
      (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in)>;

// Arbitrary immediates
def : Pat<(i32 imm:$imm),
      (OR (SHL (ADDiu ZERO, (HI16 imm:$imm)), 16),
      (ADDiu ZERO, (LO16 imm:$imm)))>;
```

For the last IR br, we translate unconditional branch (br BasicBlock_01) into jmp BasicBlock_01 by the following pattern definition,

```
def brtarget      : Operand<OtherVT> {
  let EncoderMethod = "getBranchTargetOpValue";
  let OperandType = "OPERAND_PCREL";
  let DecoderMethod = "DecodeBranchTarget";
}
...
// Unconditional branch
class UncondBranch<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
  BranchBase<op, (outs), (ins brtarget:$imm24),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$t$imm24"), [(br bb:$imm24)], IIBranch> {
    let isBranch = 1;
    let isTerminator = 1;
    let isBarrier = 1;
    let hasDelaySlot = 0;
  }
...
def JMP          : UncondBranch<0x26, "jmp">;
```

The pattern [(br bb:\$imm24)] in class UncondBranch is translated into jmp machine instruction. The other two cpu0 instructions translation is more complicate than simple one-to-one IR to machine instruction translation we have experienced until now. To solve this chained IR to machine instructions translation, we define the following pattern,

```
// brcond patterns
multiclass BrcondPats<RegisterClass RC, Instruction JEQOp, Instruction JNEOp,
  Instruction JLTOp, Instruction JGTOp, Instruction JLEOp, Instruction JGEOp,
  Instruction CMPOp> {
...
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setne RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
      (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
...
def : Pat<(brcond RC:$cond, bb:$dst),
      (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$cond, ZEROReg), bb:$dst)>;
```

Above definition support (setne RC:\$lhs, RC:\$rhs) register to register compare. There are other compare pattern like, seteq, setlt, In addition to seteq, setne, ..., we define setueq, setune, ..., by reference Mips code even though we didn't find how setune came from. We have tried to define unsigned int type, but clang still generate setne instead of setune. Pattern search order is according their appear order in context. The last pattern (brcond RC:\$cond, bb:\$dst) is meaning branch to \$dst if \$cond != 0, it is equal to (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:\$cond, ZEROReg), bb:\$dst) in cpu0 translation.

The CMP instruction will set the result to register SW, and then JNE check the condition based on SW status. Since SW is a reserved register, it will be correct even an instruction is inserted between CMP and JNE as follows,

```
cmp %2, %3
addiu $r1, $r2, 3    // $r1 register never be allocated to $SW
jne BasicBlock_02
```

The reserved registers setting by the following function code we defined before,

```
// Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp
...
// pure virtual method
BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::
getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
    static const uint16_t ReservedCPURegs[] = {
        Cpu0::ZERO, Cpu0::AT, Cpu0::GP, Cpu0::FP,
        Cpu0::SW, Cpu0::SP, Cpu0::LR, Cpu0::PC
    };
    BitVector Reserved(getNumRegs());
    typedef TargetRegisterClass::iterator RegIter;

    for (unsigned I = 0; I < array_lengthof(ReservedCPURegs); ++I)
        Reserved.set(ReservedCPURegs[I]);

    // If GP is dedicated as a global base register, reserve it.
    if (MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>()->globalBaseRegFixed()) {
        Reserved.set(Cpu0::GP);
    }

    return Reserved;
}
```

Although the following definition in Cpu0RegisterInfo.td has no real effect in Reserved Registers, you should comment the Reserved Registers in it for readability.

```
// Cpu0RegisterInfo.td
...
//=====
// Register Classes
//=====

def CPURegs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
    // Return Values and Arguments
    V0, V1, A0, A1,
    // Not preserved across procedure calls
    T9,
    // Callee save
    S0, S1, S2,
    // Reserved
    ZERO, AT, GP, FP, SW, SP, LR, PC)>;
```

By the following llc option, you can get the obj file and dump it's content by hexdump as follows,

```
118-165-79-206:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch7_1_1.cpu0.s
...
    ld  $3, 32($sp)
    cmp $3, $2
    jne $BB0_2
    jmp $BB0_1
$BB0_1:                                # %if.then
    ld  $2, 32($sp)
    addiu $2, $2, 1
```

```

    st $2, 32($sp)
$BB0_2:                                # %if.end
    ld $2, 28($sp)
...

118-165-79-206:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch7_1_1.bc -o ch7_1_1.cpu0.o

118-165-79-206:InputFiles Jonathan$ hexdump ch7_1_1.cpu0.o
// jmp offset is 0x10=16 bytes which is correct
0000080 ..... 10 20 20 02 21 00 00 10

0000090 26 00 00 00 .....

```

The immediate value of jne (op 0x21) is 16; The offset between jne and \$BB0_2 is 20 (5 words = 5*4 bytes). Suppose the jne address is X, then the label \$BB0_2 is X+20. Cpu0 is a RISC cpu0 with 3 stages of pipeline which are fetch, decode and execution according to cpu0 web site information. The cpu0 do branch instruction execution at decode stage which like mips. After the jne instruction fetched, the PC (Program Counter) is X+4 since cpu0 update PC at fetch stage. The \$BB0_2 address is equal to PC+16 for the jne branch instruction execute at decode stage. List and explain this again as follows,

```

// Fetch instruction stage for jne instruction. The fetch stage
// can be divided into 2 cycles. First cycle fetch the
// instruction. Second cycle adjust PC = PC+4.
jne $BB0_2 // Do jne compare in decode stage. PC = X+4 at this stage.
// When jne immediate value is 16, PC = PC+16. It will fetch
// X+20 which equal to label $BB0_2 instruction, ld $2, 28($sp).

jmp $BB0_1
$BB0_1:                                # %if.then
    ld $2, 32($sp)
    addiu $2, $2, 1
    st $2, 32($sp)
$BB0_2:                                # %if.end
    ld $2, 28($sp)

```

If cpu0 do jne compare in execution stage, then we should set PC=PC+12, offset of (\$BB0_2, jne \$BB0_2) – 8, in this example.

Cpu0 is for teaching purpose and didn't consider the performance with design. In reality, the conditional branch is important in performance of CPU design. According bench mark information, every 7 instructions will meet 1 branch instruction in average. Cpu0 take 2 instructions for conditional branch, (jne(cmp...)), while Mips use one instruction (bne).

Finally we list the code added for full support of control flow statement,

```

// Cpu0MCCCodeEmitter.cpp
/// getBranchTargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the branch
/// target operand. If the machine operand requires relocation,
/// record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned Cpu0MCCCodeEmitter::
getBranchTargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                      SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups) const {

    const MCOperand &MO = MI.getOperand(OpNo);
    assert(MO.isExpr() && "getBranchTargetOpValue expects only expressions");

    const MCEExpr *Expr = MO.getExpr();
    Fixups.push_back(MCFixup::Create(0, Expr,

```

```

        MCFixupKind(Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_PC24)));
    return 0;
}

// Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp
MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                                MachineOperandType MOTy,
                                                unsigned Offset) const {
    ...
    switch(MO.getTargetFlags()) {
    default:      llvm_unreachable("Invalid target flag!");
    case Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG:    Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None; break;
    ...
    }
    ...
    switch (MOTy) {
    case MachineOperand::MO_MachineBasicBlock:
        Symbol = MO.getMBB()->getSymbol();
        break;
    ...
    }
}

MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO,
                                         unsigned offset) const {
    MachineOperandType MOTy = MO.getType();

    switch (MOTy) {
    default: llvm_unreachable("unknown operand type");
    case MachineOperand::MO_Register:
        ...
    case MachineOperand::MO_MachineBasicBlock:
    case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
    case MachineOperand::MO_BlockAddress:
        ...
    }
    ...
}

// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
Cpu0TargetLowering::
Cpu0TargetLowering(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM)
: TargetLowering(TM, new Cpu0TargetObjectFile()),
  Subtarget(&TM.getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()) {
    ...
    // Used by legalize types to correctly generate the setcc result.
    // Without this, every float setcc comes with a AND/OR with the result,
    // we don't want this, since the fpcmp result goes to a flag register,
    // which is used implicitly by brcond and select operations.
    AddPromotedToType(ISD::SETCC, MVT::i1, MVT::i32);
    ...
    setOperationAction(ISD::BRCOND,          MVT::Other, Custom);

    // Operations not directly supported by Cpu0.
    setOperationAction(ISD::BR_CC,           MVT::Other, Expand);
    ...
}

// Cpu0InstrFormats.td
```

```

class BranchBase<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr,
                list<dag> pattern, InstrItinClass itin>:
  Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>
{
  bits<24> imm24;

  let Opcode = op;

  let Inst{23-0} = imm24;
}

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
// Instruction operand types
def brtarget      : Operand<OtherVT> {
  let EncoderMethod = "getBranchTargetOpValue";
  let OperandType = "OPERAND_PCREL";
  let DecoderMethod = "DecodeBranchTarget";
}
...
/// Conditional Branch
class CBranch<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
  BranchBase<op, (outs), (ins RC:$cond, brtarget:$imm24),
            !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$imm24"),
            [], IIBranch> {
    let isBranch = 1;
    let isTerminator = 1;
    let hasDelaySlot = 0;
  }

// Unconditional branch
class UncondBranch<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
  BranchBase<op, (outs), (ins brtarget:$imm24),
            !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$imm24"), [(br bb:$imm24)], IIBranch> {
    let isBranch = 1;
    let isTerminator = 1;
    let isBarrier = 1;
    let hasDelaySlot = 0;
  }
...
/// Jump and Branch Instructions
def JEQ      : CBranch<0x20, "jeq", CPURegs>;
def JNE      : CBranch<0x21, "jne", CPURegs>;
def JLT      : CBranch<0x22, "jlt", CPURegs>;
def JGT      : CBranch<0x23, "jgt", CPURegs>;
def JLE      : CBranch<0x24, "jle", CPURegs>;
def JGE      : CBranch<0x25, "jge", CPURegs>;
def JMP      : UncondBranch<0x26, "jmp">;
...
// brcond patterns
multiclass BrcondPats<RegisterClass RC, Instruction JEQOp,
  Instruction JNEOp, Instruction JLTOp, Instruction JGTOp,
  Instruction JLEOp, Instruction JGEOp, Instruction CMPOp,
  Register ZEROReg> {
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (seteq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
      (JEQOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setueq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
      (JEQOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setne RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),

```

```

        (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setune RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setlt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JLTOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setult RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JLTOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setgt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JGTOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setugt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JGTOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setle RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JLEOp (CMPOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setule RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JLEOp (CMPOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JGEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setuge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
        (JGEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;

def : Pat<(brcond RC:$cond, bb:$dst),
        (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$cond, ZEROReg), bb:$dst)>;
}

defm : BrcondPats<CPUREgs, JEQ, JNE, JLT, JGT, JLE, JGE, CMP, ZERO>;

```

The `ch7_1_2.cpp` is for “nest if” test. The `ch7_1_3.cpp` is the “for loop” as well as “while loop”, “continue”, “break”, “goto” test. You can run with them if you like to test more.

Finally, 7/1/Cpu0 support the local array definition by add the `LowerCall()` empty function in `Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp` as follows,

```

// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(SDValue InChain, SDValue Callee,
                              CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool isVarArg,
                              bool doesNotRet, bool &isTailCall,
                              const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                              const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
                              const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                              DebugLoc dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                              SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
    return InChain;
}

```

With this `LowerCall()`, it can translate `ch7_1_4.cpp`, `ch7_1_4.bc` to `ch7_1_4.cpu0.s` as follows,

```

// ch7_1_4.cpp
int main()
{
    int a[3]={0, 1, 2};

    return 0;
}

; ModuleID = 'ch7_1_4 .bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:32:32:32-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:32:64-
f32:32:32-f64:32:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32-S128"
target triple = "i386-apple-macosx10.8.0"

```

```
@_ZZ4mainE1a = private unnamed_addr constant [3 x i32] [i32 0, i32 1, i32 2],
align 4
```

```
define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
  %retval = alloca i32, align 4
  %a = alloca [3 x i32], align 4
  store i32 0, i32* %retval
  %0 = bitcast [3 x i32]* %a to i8*
  call void @llvm.memcpy.p0i8.p0i8.i32(i8* %0, i8* bitcast ([3 x i32]*
    @_ZZ4mainE1a to i8*), i32 12, i32 4, i1 false)
  ret i32 0
}
```

```
118-165-79-206:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch7_1_4.cpu0.s
```

```
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch7_1_4.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main

main:
.frame $sp,24,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0: # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
ld $2, %got(__stack_chk_guard)($gp)
ld $3, 0($2)
st $3, 20($sp)
addiu $3, $zero, 0
st $3, 16($sp)
ld $3, %got($_ZZ4mainE1a)($gp)
addiu $3, $3, %lo($_ZZ4mainE1a)
ld $4, 8($3)
st $4, 12($sp)
ld $4, 4($3)
st $4, 8($sp)
ld $3, 0($3)
st $3, 4($sp)
ld $2, 0($2)
ld $3, 20($sp)
cmp $2, $3
jne $BB0_2
jmp $BB0_1
$BB0_1: # %SP_return
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
ret $lr
$BB0_2: # %CallStackCheckFailBlk
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp1:
.size main, ($tmp1)-main
```

```
.type    $_ZZ4mainE1a,@object    # @_ZZ4mainE1a
.section .rodata,"a",@progbits
.align  2
$_ZZ4mainE1a:
.4byte  0                      # 0x0
.4byte  1                      # 0x1
.4byte  2                      # 0x2
.size    $_ZZ4mainE1a, 12
```

7.2 RISC CPU knowledge

As mentioned in the previous section, cpu0 is a RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer) CPU with 3 stages of pipeline. RISC CPU is full in world. Even the X86 of CISC (Complex Instruction Set Computer) is RISC inside. (It translate CISC instruction into micro-instruction which do pipeline as RISC). Knowledge with RISC will make you satisfied in compiler design. List these two excellent books we have read which include the real RISC CPU knowledge needed for reference. Sure, there are many books in Computer Architecture, and some of them contain real RISC CPU knowledge needed, but these two are what we read.

Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

The book of “Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface” (there are 4 editions until the book is written) is for the introduction (simple). “Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach” (there are 5 editions until the book is written) is more complicate and deep in CPU architecture.

FUNCTION CALL

The subroutine/function call of backend code translation is supported in this chapter. A lots of code needed in function call. We break it down according llvm supplied interface for easy to explanation. This chapter start from introducing the Mips stack frame structure since we borrow many part of ABI from it. Although each CPU has it's own ABI, most of RISC CPUs ABI are similar. In addition to support fixed number of arguments function call, cpu0 also upport variable number of arguments since C/C++ support this feature. Supply Mips ABI and assemble language manual on internet link in this chapter for your reference. The section “4.5 DAG Lowering” of `tricore_llvm.pdf` contains some knowledge about Lowering process. Section “4.5.1 Calling Conventions” of `tricore_llvm.pdf` is the related materials you can reference.

This chapter is more complicate than any of the previous chapter. It include stack frame and the related ABI support. If you have problem in reading the stack frame illustrated in the first three sections of this chapter, you can read the appendix B of “Procedure Call Convention” of book “Computer Organization and Design” which listed in section “RISC CPU knowledge” of chapter “Control flow statement”¹, “Run Time Memory” of compiler book, or “Function Call Sequence” and “Stack Frame” of Mips ABI.

8.1 Mips stack frame

The first thing for design the cpu0 function call is deciding how to pass arguments in function call. There are two options. The first is pass arguments all in stack. Second is pass arguments in the registers which are reserved for function arguments, and put the other arguments in stack if it over the number of registers reserved for function call. For example, Mips pass the first 4 arguments in register \$a0, \$a1, \$a2, \$a3, and the other arguments in stack if it over 4 arguments. *Mips stack frame* is the Mips stack frame.

Run `llc -march=mips` for `ch8_1.bc`, you will get the following result.

```
// ch8_1.cpp
int sum_i(int x1, int x2, int x3, int x4, int x5, int x6)
{
    int sum = x1 + x2 + x3 + x4 + x5 + x6;

    return sum;
}

int main()
{
    int a = sum_i(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);

    return a;
}
```

¹ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/ctrlflow.html#risc-cpu-knowledge>

Base	Offset	Contents	Frame
old \$sp	+16	unspecified ... variable size	High addresses
		(if present) incoming arguments passed in stack frame	Previous
		space for incoming arguments 1-4	
\$sp	+0	locals and temporaries	Current
		general register save area	
		floating-point register save area	
		argument build area	Low addresses

Figure 8.1: Mips stack frame

```

118-165-79-31:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch8_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_1.bc
118-165-79-31:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.mips.s
118-165-79-31:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_1.mips.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_1.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiiiiii,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiiii # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiiii:
.frame $sp,32,$ra
.mask 0x00000000,0
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0: # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
st $4, 28($sp)
st $5, 24($sp)
st $6, 20($sp)
st $7, 16($sp)
ld $2, 48($sp) // load argument 5
st $2, 12($sp)
ld $2, 52($sp) // load argument 6
st $2, 8($sp)
ld $3, 24($sp)
ld $4, 28($sp)
addu $3, $4, $3
ld $4, 20($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 16($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 12($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
addu $2, $3, $2
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
jr $ra
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z5sum_iiiiiii
$tmp1:
.size _Z5sum_iiiiiii, ($tmp1)-_Z5sum_iiiiiii

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main
main:
.frame $sp,48,$ra
.mask 0x80000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder

```

```

.cpload $25
.set      nomacro
# BB#0:                                     # %entry
    addiu   $sp, $sp, -48
    st      $ra, 44($sp)                   # 4-byte Folded Spill
    .cpstore 24
    st      $zero, 40($sp)
    addiu   $2, $zero, 6
    st      $2, 20($sp) // Save argument 6 to 20($sp)
    addiu   $2, $zero, 5
    st      $2, 16($sp) // Save argument 5 to 16($sp)
    ld      $25, %call16(_Z5sum_iiiiii)($gp)
    addiu   $4, $zero, 1 // Pass argument 1 to $4 (=$a0)
    addiu   $5, $zero, 2 // Pass argument 2 to $5 (=$a1)
    addiu   $6, $zero, 3
    addiu   $7, $zero, 4
    jalr    $25
    nop
    ld      $gp, 24($sp)
    st      $2, 36($sp)
    ld      $ra, 44($sp)                   # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu   $sp, $sp, 48
    jr      $ra
    nop
    .set     macro
    .set     reorder
    .end     main
$tmp4:
    .size    main, ($tmp4)-main

```

From the mips assembly code generated as above, we know it save the first 4 arguments to \$a0..\$a3 and last 2 arguments to 16(\$sp) and 20(\$sp). *Mips arguments location in stack frame* is the arguments location for example code `ch8_1.cpp`. It load argument 5 from 48(\$sp) in `sum_i()` since the argument 5 is saved to 16(\$sp) in `main()`. The stack size of `sum_i()` is 32, so 16+32(\$sp) is the location of incoming argument 5.

The 007-2418-003.pdf in ² is the Mips assembly language manual. ³ is Mips Application Binary Interface which include the *Mips stack frame*.

8.2 Load incoming arguments from stack frame

From last section, to support function call, we need implementing the arguments pass mechanism with stack frame. Before do that, let's run the old version of code 7/1/Cpu0 with `ch8_1.cpp` and see what happen.

```

118-165-79-31:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.cpu0.s
Assertion failed: (InVals.size() == Ins.size() && "LowerFormalArguments didn't
emit the correct number of values!"), function LowerArguments, file /Users/
Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/CodeGen/SelectionDAG/
SelectionDAGBuilder.cpp, line 6671.
Stack dump:
0. Program arguments: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch8_1.bc -o
ch8_1.cpu0.s

```

² <https://www.dropbox.com/sh/2pkh1fewlq2zag9/OHnrYn2nOs/doc/MIPSproAssemblyLanguageProgrammerGuide>

³ <http://www.linux-mips.org/pub/linux/mips/doc/ABI/mipsabi.pdf>

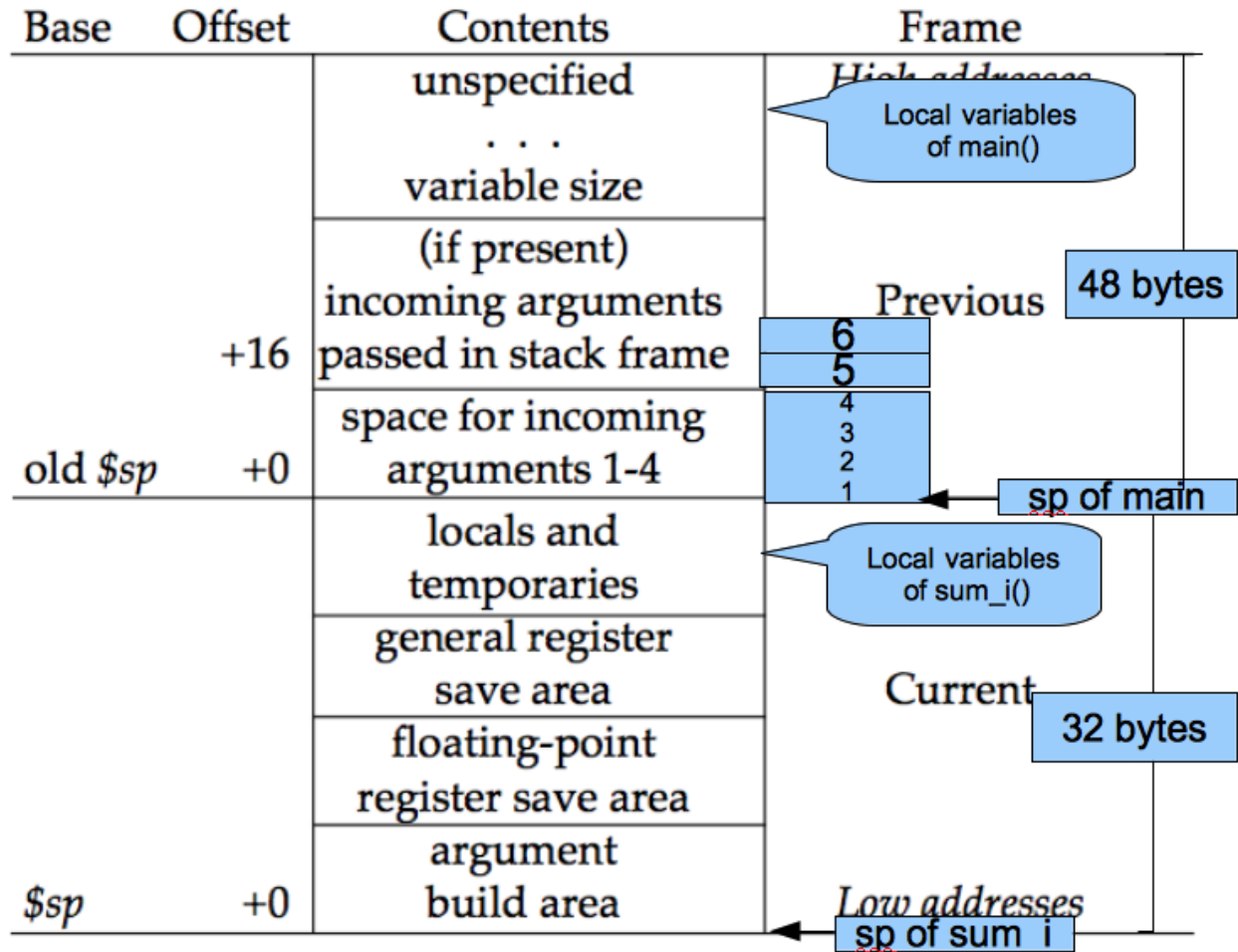


Figure 8.2: Mips arguments location in stack frame

```
1. Running pass 'Function Pass Manager' on module 'ch8_1.bc'.
2. Running pass 'CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection' on function
   '@_Z5sum_iiiiiii'
Illegal instruction: 4
```

Since 7/1/Cpu0 define the LowerFormalArguments() with empty, we get the error message as above. Before define LowerFormalArguments(), we have to choose how to pass arguments in function call. We choose pass arguments all in stack frame. We don't reserve any dedicated register for arguments passing since cpu0 has only 16 registers while Mips has 32 registers. Cpu0CallingConv.td is defined for cpu0 passing rule as follows,

```
// Cpu0CallingConv.td
...
def RetCC_Cpu0EABI : CallingConv<[
  // i32 are returned in registers V0, V1
  CCIfType<[i32], CCAssignToReg<[V0, V1]>>
]>;

//===-----
// Cpu0 EABI Calling Convention
//===-----

def CC_Cpu0EABI : CallingConv<[
  // Promote i8/i16 arguments to i32.
  CCIfType<[i8, i16], CCPromoteToType<i32>>,
  // Integer values get stored in stack slots that are 4 bytes in
  // size and 4-byte aligned.
  CCIfType<[i32], CCAssignToStack<4, 4>>
]>;

//===-----
// Cpu0 Calling Convention Dispatch
//===-----

def CC_Cpu0 : CallingConv<[
  CCDelegateTo<CC_Cpu0EABI>
]>;

def RetCC_Cpu0 : CallingConv<[
  CCDelegateTo<RetCC_Cpu0EABI>
]>;

def CSR_032 : CalleeSavedRegs<(add LR, FP,
                               (sequence "S%u", 2, 0))>;
```

As above, CC_Cpu0 is the cpu0 Calling Convention which delegate to CC_Cpu0EABI and define the CC_Cpu0EABI. The reason we don't define the Calling Convention directly in CC_Cpu0 is that a real general CPU like Mips can have several Calling Convention. Combine with the mechanism of "section Target Registration"⁴ which llvm supplied, we can use different Calling Convention in different target. Although cpu0 only have a Calling Convention right now, define with a dedicate Call Convention name (CC_Cpu0EABI in this example) is a better solution for system expand, and naming your Calling Convention. CC_Cpu0EABI as above, say it pass arguments in stack frame.

Function LowerFormalArguments() charge function incoming arguments creation. We define it as follows,

```
// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
...
```

⁴ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

```

/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool isVarArg,
                                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                         DebugLoc dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
{
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    Cpu0FI->setVarArgsFrameIndex(0);

    // Used with vargs to accumulate store chains.
    std::vector<SDValue> OutChains;

    // Assign locations to all of the incoming arguments.
    SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> ArgLocs;
    CCState CCInfo(CallConv, isVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
                  getTargetMachine(), ArgLocs, *DAG.getContext());

    CCInfo.AnalyzeFormalArguments(Ins, CC_Cpu0);

    Function::const_arg_iterator FuncArg =
        DAG.getMachineFunction().getFunction()->arg_begin();
    int LastFI = 0; // Cpu0FI->LastInArgFI is 0 at the entry of this function.

    for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i, ++FuncArg) {
        CCValAssign &VA = ArgLocs[i];
        EVT ValVT = VA.getValVT();
        ISD::ArgFlagsTy Flags = Ins[i].Flags;
        bool IsRegLoc = VA.isRegLoc();

        if (Flags.isByVal()) {
            assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
                   "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
            continue;
        }
        // sanity check
        assert(VA.isMemLoc());

        // The stack pointer offset is relative to the caller stack frame.
        LastFI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(ValVT.getSizeInBits()/8,
                                       VA.getLocMemOffset(), true);

        // Create load nodes to retrieve arguments from the stack
        SDValue FIN = DAG.getFrameIndex(LastFI, getPointerTy());
        InVals.push_back(DAG.getLoad(ValVT, dl, Chain, FIN,
                                    MachinePointerInfo::getFixedStack(LastFI),
                                    false, false, false, 0));
    }
    Cpu0FI->setLastInArgFI(LastFI);
    // All stores are grouped in one node to allow the matching between
    // the size of Ins and InVals. This only happens when on varg functions
    if (!OutChains.empty()) {

```

```

    OutChains.push_back(Chain);
    Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, dl, MVT::Other,
                        &OutChains[0], OutChains.size());
}
return Chain;
}

```

Refresh “section Global variable”⁵, we handled global variable translation by create the IR DAG in LowerGlobalAddress() first, and then do the Instruction Selection by their corresponding machine instruction DAG in Cpu0InstrInfo.td. LowerGlobalAddress() is called when llc meet the global variable access. LowerFormalArguments() work with the same way. It is called when function is entered. It get incoming arguments information by CCInfo(CallConv,..., ArgLocs, ...) before enter “for loop”. In ch8_1.cpp, there are 6 arguments in sum_i(...) function call and we use the stack frame only for arguments passing without any arguments pass in registers. So ArgLocs.size() is 6, each argument information is in ArgLocs[i] and ArgLocs[i].isMemLoc() is true. In “for loop”, it create each frame index object by LastFI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(ValVT.getSizeInBits()/8, VA.getLocMemOffset(), true) and FIN = DAG.getFrameIndex(LastFI, getPointerTy()). And then create IR DAG load node and put the load node into vector InVals by InVals.push_back(DAG.getLoad(ValVT, dl, Chain, FIN, MachinePointerInfo::getFixedStack(LastFI), false, false, false, 0)). Cpu0FI->setVarArgsFrameIndex(0) and Cpu0FI->setLastInArgFI(LastFI) are called when before and after above work. In ch8_1.cpp example, LowerFormalArguments() will be called twice. First time is for sum_i() which will create 6 load DAG for 6 incoming arguments passing into this function. Second time is for main() which didn't create any load DAG for no incoming argument passing into main(). In addition to LowerFormalArguments() which create the load DAG, we need to define the loadRegFromStackSlot() to issue the machine instruction “ld \$r, offset(\$sp)” to load incoming arguments from stack frame offset. GetMemOperand(..., FI, ...) return the Memory location of the frame index variable, which is the offset.

```

// Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
...
static MachineMemOperand* GetMemOperand(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, int FI,
                                         unsigned Flag) {
    MachineFunction &MF = *MBB.getParent();
    MachineFrameInfo &MFI = *MF.getFrameInfo();
    unsigned Align = MFI.getObjectAlignment(FI);

    return MF.getMachineMemOperand(MachinePointerInfo::getFixedStack(FI), Flag,
                                    MFI.getObjectSize(FI), Align);
}

void Cpu0InstrInfo::
loadRegFromStackSlot(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator I,
                     unsigned DestReg, int FI,
                     const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                     const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const
{
    DebugLoc DL;
    if (I != MBB.end()) DL = I->getDebugLoc();
    MachineMemOperand *MMO = GetMemOperand(MBB, FI, MachineMemOperand::MOLoad);
    unsigned Opc = 0;

    if (RC == Cpu0::CPURegsRegisterClass)
        Opc = Cpu0::LD;
    assert(Opc && "Register class not handled!");
    BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc), DestReg).addFrameIndex(FI).addImm(0)
        .addMemOperand(MMO);
}

```

In addition to Calling Convention and LowerFormalArguments(), 8/2/Cpu0 add the following code for cpu0 instruc-

⁵ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/globalvar.html#global-variable>

tions swi (Software Interrupt), jsub and jalr (function call) definition and printing.

```
// Cpu0InstrFormats.td
...
// Cpu0 Pseudo Instructions Format
class Cpu0Pseudo<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern>:
    Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, IIPseudo, Pseudo> {
        let isCodeGenOnly = 1;
        let isPseudo = 1;
    }

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
def SDT_Cpu0JumpLink      : SDTypeProfile<0, 1, [SDTCisVT<0, iPTR>]>;
...
// Call
def Cpu0JumpLink : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::JumpLink",SDT_Cpu0JumpLink,
                        [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOutGlue, SDNPOptInGlue,
                         SDNPVariadic]>;

...
def jmptarget  : Operand<OtherVT> {
    let EncoderMethod = "getJumpTargetOpValue";
}
...
def calltarget : Operand<iPTR> {
    let EncoderMethod = "getJumpTargetOpValue";
}
...
// Jump and Link (Call)
let isCall=1, hasDelaySlot=0 in {
    class JumpLink<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
        FJ<op, (outs), (ins calltarget:$target, variable_ops),
            !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$target"), [(Cpu0JumpLink imm:$target)],
            IIBranch> {
            let DecoderMethod = "DecodeJumpTarget";
        }

    class JumpLinkReg<bits<8> op, string instr_asm,
        RegisterClass RC>:
        FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$rb, variable_ops),
            !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$rb"), [(Cpu0JumpLink RC:$rb)], IIBranch> {
            let rc = 0;
            let ra = 14;
            let shamt = 0;
        }
    }

...
/// Jump and Branch Instructions
def SWI : JumpLink<0x2A, "swi">;
def JSUB : JumpLink<0x2B, "jsub">;
...
def JALR : JumpLinkReg<0x2D, "jalr", CPURegs>;
...
def : Pat<(Cpu0JumpLink (i32 tglobaladdr:$dst)),
        (JSUB tglobaladdr:$dst)>;
...

// Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp
...
```

```
static void printExpr(const MCEExpr *Expr, raw_ostream &OS) {
    switch (Kind) {
        ...
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL: OS << "%call24("; break;
        ...
    }
    ...
}

// Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp
...
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getMachineOpValue(const MCInst &MI, const MCOperand &MO,
                  SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups) const {
    ...
    switch (cast<MCSymbolRefExpr>(Expr)->getKind()) {
        ...
        case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL:
            FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_CALL24;
            break;
        ...
    }
    ...
}

// Cpu0MachineFucntion.h
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
    ...
    /// VarArgsFrameIndex - FrameIndex for start of varargs area.
    int VarArgsFrameIndex;

    // Range of frame object indices.
    // InArgFIRange: Range of indices of all frame objects created during call to
    //                LowerFormalArguments.
    // OutArgFIRange: Range of indices of all frame objects created during call to
    //                LowerCall except for the frame object for restoring $gp.
    std::pair<int, int> InArgFIRange, OutArgFIRange;
    int GPFI; // Index of the frame object for restoring $gp
    mutable int DynAllocFI; // Frame index of dynamically allocated stack area.
    unsigned MaxCallFrameSize;

public:
    Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)
    : MF(MF), GlobalBaseReg(0),
      VarArgsFrameIndex(0), InArgFIRange(std::make_pair(-1, 0)),
      OutArgFIRange(std::make_pair(-1, 0)), GPFI(0), DynAllocFI(0),
      MaxCallFrameSize(0)
    {}

    bool isInArgFI(int FI) const {
        return FI <= InArgFIRange.first && FI >= InArgFIRange.second;
    }

    void setLastInArgFI(int FI) { InArgFIRange.second = FI; }

    void extendOutArgFIRange(int FirstFI, int LastFI) {
        if (!OutArgFIRange.second)
            // this must be the first time this function was called.
            OutArgFIRange.first = FirstFI;
    }
}
```

```

    OutArgFIRange.second = LastFI;
}

int getGPFI() const { return GPFI; }
void setGPFI(int FI) { GPFI = FI; }
bool needGPSaveRestore() const { return getGPFI(); }
bool isGPFI(int FI) const { return GPFI && GPFI == FI; }

// The first call to this function creates a frame object for dynamically
// allocated stack area.
int getDynAllocFI() const {
    if (!DynAllocFI)
        DynAllocFI = MF.getFrameInfo()->CreateFixedObject(4, 0, true);

    return DynAllocFI;
}
bool isDynAllocFI(int FI) const { return DynAllocFI && DynAllocFI == FI; }
...
int getVarArgsFrameIndex() const { return VarArgsFrameIndex; }
void setVarArgsFrameIndex(int Index) { VarArgsFrameIndex = Index; }

unsigned getMaxCallFrameSize() const { return MaxCallFrameSize; }
void setMaxCallFrameSize(unsigned S) { MaxCallFrameSize = S; }
};

```

After above changes, you can run 8/2/Cpu0 with ch8_1.cpp and see what happens in the following,

```

118-165-79-83:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.cpu0.s
Assertion failed: ((isTailCall || InVals.size() == Ins.size()) &&
"LowerCall didn't emit the correct number of values!"), function LowerCallTo,
file /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/CodeGen/SelectionDAG/
SelectionDAGBuilder.cpp, line 6482.
Stack dump:
0. Program arguments: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch8_1.bc -o
ch8_1.cpu0.s
1. Running pass 'Function Pass Manager' on module 'ch8_1.bc'.
2. Running pass 'CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection' on function
'@main'
Illegal instruction: 4

```

8.3 Store outgoing arguments to stack frame

Mips arguments location in stack frame depicted two steps to take care arguments passing. One is store outgoing arguments in caller function, and the other is load incoming arguments in callee function. We defined LowerFormalArguments() for “load incoming arguments” in callee function last section. Now, we will finish “store outgoing arguments” in caller function. LowerCall() is responsible to do this. The implementation as follows,

```

// Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp
...
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(SDValue InChain, SDValue Callee,
                              CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool isVarArg,
                              bool doesNotRet, bool &isTailCall,

```

```
        const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
        const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
        const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
        DebugLoc dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
        SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
// Cpu0 target does not yet support tail call optimization.
isTailCall = false;

MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
const TargetFrameLowering *TFL = MF.getTarget().getFrameLowering();
bool IsPIC = getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::PIC_;
Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

// Analyze operands of the call, assigning locations to each operand.
SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> ArgLocs;
CCState CCInfo(CallConv, isVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
               getTargetMachine(), ArgLocs, *DAG.getContext());

CCInfo.AnalyzeCallOperands(Outs, CC_Cpu0);

// Get a count of how many bytes are to be pushed on the stack.
unsigned NextStackOffset = CCInfo.getNextStackOffset();

// If this is the first call, create a stack frame object that points to
// a location to which .cprestore saves $gp.
if (IsPIC && Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed() && !Cpu0FI->getGPFI())
    Cpu0FI->setGPFI(MFI->CreateFixedObject(4, 0, true));
// Get the frame index of the stack frame object that points to the location
// of dynamically allocated area on the stack.
int DynAllocFI = Cpu0FI->getDynAllocFI();
unsigned MaxCallFrameSize = Cpu0FI->getMaxCallFrameSize();

if (MaxCallFrameSize < NextStackOffset) {
    Cpu0FI->setMaxCallFrameSize(NextStackOffset);

    // Set the offsets relative to $sp of the $gp restore slot and dynamically
    // allocated stack space. These offsets must be aligned to a boundary
    // determined by the stack alignment of the ABI.
    unsigned StackAlignment = TFL->getStackAlignment();
    NextStackOffset = (NextStackOffset + StackAlignment - 1) /
                      StackAlignment * StackAlignment;

    MFI->setObjectOffset(DynAllocFI, NextStackOffset);
}
// Chain is the output chain of the last Load/Store or CopyToReg node.
// ByValChain is the output chain of the last Memcpy node created for copying
// byval arguments to the stack.
SDValue Chain, CallSeqStart, ByValChain;
SDValue NextStackOffsetVal = DAG.getIntPtrConstant(NextStackOffset, true);
Chain = CallSeqStart = DAG.getCALLSEQ_START(InChain, NextStackOffsetVal);
ByValChain = InChain;

// With EABI is it possible to have 16 args on registers.
SmallVector<std::pair<unsigned, SDValue>, 16> RegsToPass;
SmallVector<SDValue, 8> MemOpChains;

int FirstFI = -MFI->getNumFixedObjects() - 1, LastFI = 0;
```

```

// Walk the register/memloc assignments, inserting copies/loads.
for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
    SDValue Arg = OutVals[i];
    CCValAssign &VA = ArgLocs[i];
    MVT ValVT = VA.getValVT(), LocVT = VA.getLocVT();
    ISD::ArgFlagsTy Flags = Outs[i].Flags;

    // ByVal Arg.
    if (Flags.isByVal()) {
        assert("!!!Error!!!, Flags.isByVal()==true");
        assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
            "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
        continue;
    }

    // Register can't get to this point...
    assert(VA.isMemLoc());

    // Create the frame index object for this incoming parameter
    LastFI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(ValVT.getSizeInBits()/8,
                                    VA.getLocMemOffset(), true);
    SDValue PtrOff = DAG.getFrameIndex(LastFI, getPointerTy());

    // emit ISD::STORE whichs stores the
    // parameter value to a stack location
    MemOpChains.push_back(DAG.getStore(Chain, dl, Arg, PtrOff,
                                       MachinePointerInfo(), false, false, 0));
}

// Extend range of indices of frame objects for outgoing arguments that were
// created during this function call. Skip this step if no such objects were
// created.
if (LastFI)
    Cpu0FI->extendOutArgFIRange(FirstFI, LastFI);

// If a memcpy has been created to copy a byval arg to a stack, replace the
// chain input of CallSeqStart with ByValChain.
if (InChain != ByValChain)
    DAG.UpdateNodeOperands(CallSeqStart.getNode(), ByValChain,
                          NextStackOffsetVal);

// Transform all store nodes into one single node because all store
// nodes are independent of each other.
if (!MemOpChains.empty())
    Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, dl, MVT::Other,
                        &MemOpChains[0], MemOpChains.size());

// If the callee is a GlobalAddress/ExternalSymbol node (quite common, every
// direct call is) turn it into a TargetGlobalAddress/TargetExternalSymbol
// node so that legalize doesn't hack it.
unsigned char OpFlag;
bool IsPICCall = IsPIC; // true if calls are translated to jalr $25
bool GlobalOrExternal = false;
SDValue CalleeLo;

if (GlobalAddressSDNode *G = dyn_cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Callee)) {
    OpFlag = IsPICCall ? Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL : Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG;
    Callee = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(G->getGlobal(), dl,

```

```
getPointerTy(), 0, OpFlag);

GlobalOrExternal = true;
}
else if (ExternalSymbolSDNode *S = dyn_cast<ExternalSymbolSDNode>(Callee)) {
    if (!IsPIC) // static
        OpFlag = Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG;
    else // O32 & PIC
        OpFlag = Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL;
    Callee = DAG.getTargetExternalSymbol(S->getSymbol(), getPointerTy(),
                                         OpFlag);

    GlobalOrExternal = true;
}

SDValue InFlag;

// Create nodes that load address of callee and copy it to T9
if (IsPICCall) {
    if (GlobalOrExternal) {
        // Load callee address
        Callee = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, dl, getPointerTy(),
                             GetGlobalReg(DAG, getPointerTy()), Callee);
        SDValue LoadValue = DAG.getLoad(getPointerTy(), dl, DAG.getEntryNode(),
                                         Callee, MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(),
                                         false, false, false, 0);

        // Use GOT+LO if callee has internal linkage.
        if (CalleeLo.getNode()) {
            SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, dl, getPointerTy(), CalleeLo);
            Callee = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, dl, getPointerTy(), LoadValue, Lo);
        } else
            Callee = LoadValue;
    }
}

// T9 should contain the address of the callee function if
// -relocation-model=pic or it is an indirect call.
if (IsPICCall || !GlobalOrExternal) {
    // copy to T9
    unsigned T9Reg = Cpu0::T9;
    Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, dl, T9Reg, Callee, SDValue(0, 0));
    InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);
    Callee = DAG.getRegister(T9Reg, getPointerTy());
}

// Cpu0JmpLink = #chain, #target_address, #opt_in_flags...
//              = Chain, Callee, Reg#1, Reg#2, ...
//
// Returns a chain & a flag for retval copy to use.
SDVTList NodeTys = DAG.getVTList(MVT::Other, MVT::Glue);
SmallVector<SDValue, 8> Ops;
Ops.push_back(Chain);
Ops.push_back(Callee);

// Add argument registers to the end of the list so that they are
// known live into the call.
for (unsigned i = 0, e = RegsToPass.size(); i != e; ++i)
    Ops.push_back(DAG.getRegister(RegsToPass[i].first,
                                   RegsToPass[i].second.getValueType()));
```

```

// Add a register mask operand representing the call-preserved registers.
const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI = getTargetMachine().getRegisterInfo();
const uint32_t *Mask = TRI->getCallPreservedMask(CallConv);
assert(Mask && "Missing call preserved mask for calling convention");
Ops.push_back(DAG.getRegisterMask(Mask));

if (InFlag.getNode())
    Ops.push_back(InFlag);

Chain = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::JmpLink, dl, NodeTys, &Ops[0], Ops.size());
InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);

// Create the CALLSEQ_END node.
Chain = DAG.getCALLSEQ_END(Chain,
                           DAG.getIntPtrConstant(NextStackOffset, true),
                           DAG.getIntPtrConstant(0, true), InFlag);
InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);

// Handle result values, copying them out of physregs into vregs that we
// return.
return LowerCallResult(Chain, InFlag, CallConv, isVarArg,
                       Ins, dl, DAG, InVals);
}

/// LowerCallResult - Lower the result values of a call into the
/// appropriate copies out of appropriate physical registers.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCallResult(SDValue Chain, SDValue InFlag,
                                   CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool isVarArg,
                                   const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                   DebugLoc dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                   SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
    // Assign locations to each value returned by this call.
    SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> RVLocs;
    CCState CCInfo(CallConv, isVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
                   getTargetMachine(), RVLocs, *DAG.getContext());

    CCInfo.AnalyzeCallResult(Ins, RetCC_Cpu0);

    // Copy all of the result registers out of their specified physreg.
    for (unsigned i = 0; i != RVLocs.size(); ++i) {
        Chain = DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, dl, RVLocs[i].getLocReg(),
                                   RVLocs[i].getValVT(), InFlag).getValue(1);
        InFlag = Chain.getValue(2);
        InVals.push_back(Chain.getValue(0));
    }

    return Chain;
}

```

Just like load incoming arguments from stack frame, we call `CCInfo(CallConv,..., ArgLocs, ...)` to get outgoing arguments information before enter “for loop” and set stack alignment with 8 bytes. They’re almost same in “for loop” with `LowerFormalArguments()`, except `LowerCall()` create store DAG vector instead of load DAG vector. After the “for loop”, it create “ld \$6, %call24(Z5sum_iiii)(%gp)” and jalr \$6 for calling subroutine (the \$6 is \$t9) in PIC mode. `DAG.getCALLSEQ_START()` and `DAG.getCALLSEQ_END()` are set before the “for loop” and after call subroutine, they insert `CALLSEQ_START`, `CALLSEQ_END`, and translate into pseudo machine instructions `!ADJCALLSTACKDOWN`, `!ADJCALLSTACKUP` later according `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` definition as follows.

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
def SDT_Cpu0CallSeqStart : SDCallSeqStart<[SDTCisVT<0, i32>]>;
def SDT_Cpu0CallSeqEnd   : SDCallSeqEnd<[SDTCisVT<0, i32>, SDTCisVT<1, i32>]>;
...
// These are target-independent nodes, but have target-specific formats.
def callseq_start : SDNode<"ISD::CALLSEQ_START", SDT_Cpu0CallSeqStart,
                          [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOutGlue]>;
def callseq_end   : SDNode<"ISD::CALLSEQ_END", SDT_Cpu0CallSeqEnd,
                          [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPOutGlue]>;

//=====//
// Pseudo instructions
//=====//

// As stack alignment is always done with addiu, we need a 16-bit immediate
let Defs = [SP], Uses = [SP] in {
def ADJCALLSTACKDOWN : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins uimm16:$amt),
                                   "!ADJCALLSTACKDOWN $amt",
                                   [(callseq_start timm:$amt)]>;
def ADJCALLSTACKUP   : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins uimm16:$amt1, uimm16:$amt2),
                                   "!ADJCALLSTACKUP $amt1",
                                   [(callseq_end timm:$amt1, timm:$amt2)]>;
}
```

Like load incoming arguments, we need to implement storeRegToStackSlot() for store outgoing arguments to stack frame offset.

```
.. code-block:: c++
```

```
// Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
...
// - st SrcReg, MMO(FI)
void Cpu0InstrInfo::
storeRegToStackSlot(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator I,
                    unsigned SrcReg, bool isKill, int FI,
                    const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                    const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const {
    DebugLoc DL;
    if (I != MBB.end()) DL = I->getDebugLoc();
    MachineMemOperand *MMO = GetMemOperand(MBB, FI, MachineMemOperand::MOSStore);

    unsigned Opc = 0;

    if (RC == Cpu0::CPURegsRegisterClass)
        Opc = Cpu0::ST;
    assert(Opc && "Register class not handled!");
    BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc)).addReg(SrcReg, getKillRegState(isKill))
        .addFrameIndex(FI).addImm(0).addMemOperand(MMO);
}
```

Now, let's run 8/3/Cpu0 with ch8_1.cpp to get result as follows,

```
118-165-79-83:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.cpu0.s
118-165-79-83:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_1.cpu0.s
```



```

.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_1.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiiiiii,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiiii # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiiii:
.frame $sp,32,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0: # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
ld $2, 32($sp)
st $2, 28($sp)
ld $2, 36($sp)
st $2, 24($sp)
ld $2, 40($sp)
st $2, 20($sp)
ld $2, 44($sp)
st $2, 16($sp)
ld $2, 48($sp)
st $2, 12($sp)
ld $2, 52($sp)
st $2, 8($sp)
ld $3, 24($sp)
ld $4, 28($sp)
add $3, $4, $3
ld $4, 20($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 16($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 12($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
add $2, $3, $2
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z5sum_iiiiiii
$tmp1:
.size _Z5sum_iiiiiii, ($tmp1)-_Z5sum_iiiiiii

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main
main:
.frame $sp,40,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0: # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -40

```

```
st  $1r, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st  $2, 32($sp)
!ADJCALLSTACKDOWN 24
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st  $2, 60($sp) // wrong offset
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st  $2, 56($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st  $2, 52($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st  $2, 48($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
st  $2, 44($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st  $2, 40($sp)
ld  $6, %call24(_Z5sum_iiiiii)($gp)
jalr $6
!ADJCALLSTACKUP 24
st  $2, 28($sp)
ld  $1r, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
ret $1r
.set    macro
.set    reorder
.end    main
$tmp4:
.size   main, ($tmp4)-main
```

It store the arguments to wrong offset. We will fix this issue and take care !ADJCALLSTACKUP and !ADJCALLSTACKDOWN in next two sections.

8.4 Fix the wrong offset in storing arguments to stack frame

To fix the wrong offset in storing arguments, we modify the following code in `eliminateFrameIndex()` as follows. The bold text as below is added in 8/4/Cpu0 to set the caller outgoing arguments into `spOffset($sp)` (8/3/Cpu0 set them to `pOffset+stackSize($sp)`).

```
// Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp
...
void Cpu0RegisterInfo::
eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, int SPAdj,
                    RegScavenger *RS) const {
    ...
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    ...
    if (Cpu0FI->isOutArgFI(FrameIndex) || Cpu0FI->isDynAllocFI(FrameIndex) ||
        (FrameIndex >= MinCSFI && FrameIndex <= MaxCSFI))
        FrameReg = Cpu0::SP;
    else
        FrameReg = getFrameRegister(MF);
    ...
    // Calculate final offset.
    // - There is no need to change the offset if the frame object is one of the
    //   following: an outgoing argument, pointer to a dynamically allocated
    //   stack space or a $gp restore location,
```

```

// - If the frame object is any of the following, its offset must be adjusted
//   by adding the size of the stack:
//   incoming argument, callee-saved register location or local variable.
if (Cpu0FI->isOutArgFI(FrameIndex) || Cpu0FI->isGPFI(FrameIndex) ||
    Cpu0FI->isDynAllocFI(FrameIndex))
    Offset = spOffset;
else
    Offset = spOffset + (int64_t)stackSize;
Offset += MI.getOperand(i+1).getImm();

DEBUG(errs() << "Offset      : " << Offset << "\n" << "<----->\n");

// If MI is not a debug value, make sure Offset fits in the 16-bit immediate
// field.
if (!MI.isDebugValue() && !isInt<16>(Offset)) {
    assert("(!MI.isDebugValue() && !isInt<16>(Offset))");
}

MI.getOperand(i).ChangeToRegister(FrameReg, false);
MI.getOperand(i+1).ChangeToImmediate(Offset);
}

// Cpu0MachineFunction.h
...
bool isOutArgFI(int FI) const {
    return FI <= OutArgFIRange.first && FI >= OutArgFIRange.second;
}

```

Run 8/4/Cpu0 with ch8_1.cpp will get the following result. It correct arguments offset in main() from (0+40)\$sp, (8+40)\$sp, ..., to (0)\$sp, (8)\$sp, ..., where the stack size is 40 in main().

```

118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
asm ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.cpu0.s
118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_1.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_1.bc"
.text
.globl __Z5sum_iiiiiii
.align 2
.type __Z5sum_iiiiiii,@function
.ent __Z5sum_iiiiiii # @__Z5sum_iiiiiii
__Z5sum_iiiiiii:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,32,$1r
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 32
ld $2, 32($sp)
st $2, 28($sp)
ld $2, 36($sp)
st $2, 24($sp)

```

```
ld $2, 40($sp)
st $2, 20($sp)
ld $2, 44($sp)
st $2, 16($sp)
ld $2, 48($sp)
st $2, 12($sp)
ld $2, 52($sp)
st $2, 8($sp)
ld $3, 24($sp)
ld $4, 28($sp)
add $3, $4, $3
ld $4, 20($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 16($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 12($sp)
add $3, $3, $4
add $2, $3, $2
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z5sum_iiiiiii
$tmp2:
.size _Z5sum_iiiiiii, ($tmp2)-_Z5sum_iiiiiii
.cfi_endproc

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,40,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -40
$tmp5:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 40
st $lr, 36($sp)                        # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp6:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 32($sp)
!ADJCALLSTACKDOWN 24
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st $2, 20($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st $2, 16($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st $2, 8($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
```

```

st    $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st    $2, 0($sp)
ld    $6, %call24(_Z5sum_iiiiii)($gp)
jalr  $6
!ADJCALLSTACKUP 24
st    $2, 28($sp)
ld    $lr, 36($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
ret   $lr
.set   macro
.set   reorder
.end   main
$tmp7:
.size  main, ($tmp7)-main
.cfi_endproc

```

The incoming arguments is the formal arguments defined in compiler and program language books. The outgoing arguments is the actual arguments. Summary callee incoming arguments and caller outgoing arguments as *Callee incoming arguments and caller outgoing arguments*.

*** Arguments location is calculated in Cpu0RegisterInfo::eliminateFrameIndex().**

	Callee	Caller
Charged Function	LowerFormalArguments()	LowerCall()
Charged Function Created	Create load vectors for incoming arguments	Create store vectors for outgoing arguments
Arguments location	<u>spOffset</u> + stackSize	<u>spOffset</u>

Figure 8.3: Callee incoming arguments and caller outgoing arguments

8.5 Pseudo hook instruction ADJCALLSTACKDOWN and ADJCALLSTACKUP

To fix the !ADJSTACKDOWN and !ADJSTACKUP, we call Cpu0GenInstrInfo(Cpu0:: ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKUP) in Cpu0InstrInfo() constructor function and define eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr() as follows,

```

// Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp
...
Cpu0InstrInfo::Cpu0InstrInfo(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm)
: Cpu0GenInstrInfo(Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKUP),
...

// Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp
...
// Cpu0
// This function eliminate ADJCALLSTACKDOWN,
// ADJCALLSTACKUP pseudo instructions
void Cpu0RegisterInfo::
eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr(MachineFunction &MF, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,

```

```
MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {  
  // Simply discard ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, ADJCALLSTACKUP instructions.  
  MBB.erase(I);  
}
```

With above definition, `eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr()` will be called when `llvm` meet pseudo instructions `ADJCALLSTACKDOWN` and `ADJCALLSTACKUP`. We just discard these 2 pseudo instructions. Run `8/5/Cpu0` with `ch8_1.cpp` will get the following result.

```
118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/  
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype  
=asm ch8_1.bc -o ch8_1.cpu0.s
```

```
118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_1.cpu0.s
```

```
.section .mdebug.abi32  
.previous  
.file "ch8_1.bc"  
.text  
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiiii  
.align 2  
.type _Z5sum_iiiiiii,@function  
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiiii # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii  
_Z5sum_iiiiiii:  
.cfi_startproc  
.frame $sp,32,$lr  
.mask 0x00000000,0  
.set noreorder  
.set nomacro  
# BB#0:  
addiu $sp, $sp, -32  
$tmp1:  
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 32  
ld $2, 32($sp)  
st $2, 28($sp)  
ld $2, 36($sp)  
st $2, 24($sp)  
ld $2, 40($sp)  
st $2, 20($sp)  
ld $2, 44($sp)  
st $2, 16($sp)  
ld $2, 48($sp)  
st $2, 12($sp)  
ld $2, 52($sp)  
st $2, 8($sp)  
ld $3, 24($sp)  
ld $4, 28($sp)  
add $3, $4, $3  
ld $4, 20($sp)  
add $3, $3, $4  
ld $4, 16($sp)  
add $3, $3, $4  
ld $4, 12($sp)  
add $3, $3, $4  
add $2, $3, $2  
st $2, 4($sp)  
addiu $sp, $sp, 32  
ret $lr  
.set macro  
.set reorder
```

```

.end _Z5sum_iiiiiii
$tmp2:
.size _Z5sum_iiiiiii, ($tmp2)-_Z5sum_iiiiiii
.cfi_endproc

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,64,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -64
$tmp5:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 64
st $lr, 60($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp6:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 56($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st $2, 20($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st $2, 16($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st $2, 8($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st $2, 0($sp)
ld $6, %call24(_Z5sum_iiiiiii)($gp)
jalr $6
st $2, 52($sp)
ld $lr, 60($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 64
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp7:
.size main, ($tmp7)-main
.cfi_endproc

```

8.6 Handle \$gp register in PIC addressing mode

In “section Global variable”⁵, we mentioned two addressing mode, the static address mode and PIC (position-independent code) mode. We also mentioned, one example of PIC mode is used in share library. Share library usually can be loaded in different memory address decided at run time. The static mode (absolute address mode) is usually

designed to load in specific memory address decided at compile time. Since share library can be loaded in different memory address, the global variable address cannot be decided at compile time. But, we can caculate the distance between the global variable address and shared library function if they will be loaded to the contiguous memory space together.

Let's run 8/6/Cpu0 with ch8_2.cpp to get the following result of we putting the comment in it for explanation.

```
118-165-67-25:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_2.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_2.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiiiiii,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiiii # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiiii:
...
.cpload $t9 // assign $gp = $t9 by loader when loader load re-entry
              // function (shared library) of _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.set         nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -32
$tmp1:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 32
...
    ld       $3, %got(gI)($gp) // %got(gI) is offset of (gI - _Z5sum_iiiiiii)
...
    ret      $lr
.set       macro
.set       reorder
.end       _Z5sum_iiiiiii
...
.ent       main # @main
main:
    .cfi_startproc
    .frame   $sp,72,$lr
    .mask    0x00004000,-4
    .set     noreorder
    .cpload  $t9
    .set     nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu    $sp, $sp, -72
$tmp5:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 72
    st       $lr, 68($sp) # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp6:
    .cfi_offset 14, -4
    .cpstore 24 // save $gp to 24($sp)
    addiu    $2, $zero, 0
...
    ld       $6, %call24(_Z5sum_iiiiiii)($gp)
    jalr     $6 // $t9 register number is 6, meaning $6 and %t9 are the
                // same register
    ld       $gp, 24($sp) // restore $gp from 24($sp)
...
    addiu    $sp, $sp, 72
    ret      $lr
.set       macro
```



```

        .set      reorder
        .end      main
$tmp7:
        .size     main, ($tmp7)-main
        .cfi_endproc

        .type     gI,@object          # @gI
        .data
        .globl    gI
        .align    2
gI:
        .4byte    100                 # 0x64
        .size     gI, 4

```

As above code comment, “**.cprestore 24**” is a pseudo instruction for saving \$gp to 24(\$sp); Instruction “**ld \$gp, 24(\$sp)**” will restore the \$gp. In other word, \$gp is caller saved register, so main() need to save/restore \$gp before/after call the shared library `_Z5sum_iiii()` function. In `_Z5sum_iiii()` function, we translate global variable gI address by “**ld \$3, %got(gI)(\$gp)**” where `%got(gI)` is offset of (gI - `_Z5sum_iiii`) (we can write our cpu0 compiler to produce obj code by calculate the offset value).

According the original cpu0 web site information, it only support “**jsub**” 24 bits address range access. We add “**jalr**” to cpu0 and expand it to 32 bit address. We did this change for two reason. One is cpu0 can be expand to 32 bit address space by only add this instruction. The other is cpu0 is designed for teaching purpose, this book has the same purpose for llvm backend design. We reserve “**jalr**” as PIC mode for shared library or dynamic loading code to demonstrate the caller how to handle the caller saved register \$gp in calling the shared library and the shared library how to use \$gp to access global variable address. This solution is popular in reality and deserve change cpu0 official design as a compiler book. Mips use the same solution in 32 bits Mips32 CPU.

Now, as the following code added in 8/6/Cpu0, we can issue “**.cprestore**” in `emitPrologue()` and emit `ld $gp, ($gp save slot on stack)` after `jalr` by create file `Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp` which run as a function pass.

```

// # CMakeLists.txt
...
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen
...
    Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp
...

// Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
...
bool Cpu0PassConfig::addPreRegAlloc() {
    // Do not restore $gp if target is Cpu064.
    // In N32/64, $gp is a callee-saved register.

    PM->add(createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(getCpu0TargetMachine()));
    return true;
}

// Cpu0.h
...
FunctionPass *createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);

// Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp
...

void Cpu0FrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF) const {
    ...
    unsigned RegSize = 4;

```

```
unsigned LocalVarAreaOffset = Cpu0FI->needGPSaveRestore() ?
(MFI->getObjectOffset(Cpu0FI->getGPFI()) + RegSize) :
Cpu0FI->getMaxCallFrameSize();
....
// Restore GP from the saved stack location
if (Cpu0FI->needGPSaveRestore()) {
    unsigned Offset = MFI->getObjectOffset(Cpu0FI->getGPFI());
    BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::CPRESTORE).addImm(Offset)
        .addReg(Cpu0::GP);
}
}

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
...
// When handling PIC code the assembler needs .cpload and .cprestore
// directives. If the real instructions corresponding these directives
// are used, we have the same behavior, but get also a bunch of warnings
// from the assembler.
let neverHasSideEffects = 1 in
def CPRESTORE : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins i32imm:$loc, CPURegs:$gp),
    ".cprestore\t$t$loc", []>;

// Cpu0SelLowering.cpp
...
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(SDValue InChain, SDValue Callee,
    CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool isVarArg,
    bool doesNotRet, bool &isTailCall,
    const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
    const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
    const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
    DebugLoc dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
    SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
    ...
    // If this is the first call, create a stack frame object that points to
    // a location to which .cprestore saves $gp.
    if (IsPIC && Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed() && !Cpu0FI->getGPFI())
        ...
    if (MaxCallFrameSize < NextStackOffset) {
        if (Cpu0FI->needGPSaveRestore())
            MFI->setObjectOffset(Cpu0FI->getGPFI(), NextStackOffset);
        ...
    }
}

// Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp
//===-- Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp - Emit GP Restore Instruction =====//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//===-----//
//
// This pass emits instructions that restore $gp right
// after jalr instructions.
//
```

```
//=====
#define DEBUG_TYPE "emit-gp-restore"

#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"

using namespace llvm;

namespace {
    struct Inserter : public MachineFunctionPass {

        TargetMachine &TM;
        const TargetInstrInfo *TII;

        static char ID;
        Inserter(TargetMachine &tm)
            : MachineFunctionPass(ID), TM(tm), TII(tm.getInstrInfo()) { }

        virtual const char *getPassName() const {
            return "Cpu0 Emit GP Restore";
        }

        bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F);
    };
    char Inserter::ID = 0;
} // end of anonymous namespace

bool Inserter::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) {
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = F.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    if ((TM.getRelocationModel() != Reloc::PIC_) ||
        (!Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed()))
        return false;

    bool Changed = false;
    int FI = Cpu0FI->getGPFI();

    for (MachineFunction::iterator MFI = F.begin(), MFE = F.end();
         MFI != MFE; ++MFI) {
        MachineBasicBlock& MBB = *MFI;
        MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MFI->begin();

        /// IsLandingPad - Indicate that this basic block is entered via an
        /// exception handler.
        /// If MBB is a landing pad, insert instruction that restores $gp after
        /// EH_LABEL.
        if (MBB.isLandingPad()) {
            /// Find EH_LABEL first.
            for (; I->getOpcode() != TargetOpcode::EH_LABEL; ++I) ;

            /// Insert ld.
            ++I;

```

```

    DebugLoc dl = I != MBB.end() ? I->getDebugLoc() : DebugLoc();
    BuildMI(MBB, I, dl, TII->get(Cpu0::LD), Cpu0::GP).addFrameIndex(FI)
        .addImm(0);
    Changed = true;
}

while (I != MFI->end()) {
    if (I->getOpcode() != Cpu0::JALR) {
        ++I;
        continue;
    }

    DebugLoc dl = I->getDebugLoc();
    // emit ld $gp, ($gp save slot on stack) after jalr
    BuildMI(MBB, ++I, dl, TII->get(Cpu0::LD), Cpu0::GP).addFrameIndex(FI)
        .addImm(0);
    Changed = true;
}

return Changed;
}

/// createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass - Returns a pass that emits instructions that
/// restores $gp clobbered by jalr instructions.
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm) {
    return new Inserter(tm);
}

//===-- Cpu0MachineFunctionInfo.h - Private data used for Cpu0 -----* C++ -*-==//
...
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
    ...
    bool EmitNOAT;

public:
    Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)
        : ...
        MaxCallFrameSize(0), EmitNOAT(false)
        ...
    bool getEmitNOAT() const { return EmitNOAT; }
    void setEmitNOAT() { EmitNOAT = true; }

};

} // end of namespace llvm

#endif // CPU0_MACHINE_FUNCTION_INFO_H

// Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp
...
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstrWithMacroNoAT(const MachineInstr *MI) {
    MCInst TmpInst;

    MCInstLowering.Lower(MI, TmpInst);
    OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tmacro"));
    if (Cpu0FI->getEmitNOAT())
        OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tat"));
}

```

```

OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(TmpInst);
if (Cpu0FI->getEmitNOAT())
    OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnoat"));
OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnomacro"));
}

void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {
    ...
    unsigned Opc = MI->getOpcode();
    MCInst TmpInst0;
    SmallVector<MCInst, 4> MCInsts;

    switch (Opc) {
    case Cpu0::CPRESTORE: {
        const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(0);
        assert(MO.isImm() && "CPRESTORE's operand must be an immediate.");
        int64_t Offset = MO.getImm();

        if (OutStreamer.hasRawTextSupport()) {
            if (!isInt<16>(Offset)) {
                EmitInstrWithMacroNoAT(MI);
                return;
            }
        } else {
            MCInstLowering.LowerCPRESTORE(Offset, MCInsts);

            for (SmallVector<MCInst, 4>::iterator I = MCInsts.begin();
                I != MCInsts.end(); ++I)
                OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(*I);

            return;
        }

        break;
    }
    default:
        break;
    }

    MCInstLowering.Lower(MI, TmpInst0);
    OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(TmpInst0);
}

void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionBodyStart() {
    ...
    if (OutStreamer.hasRawTextSupport()) {
        ...
        if (Cpu0FI->getEmitNOAT())
            OutStreamer.EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnoat"));
    } else if (EmitCPLoad) {
        SmallVector<MCInst, 4> MCInsts;
        MCInstLowering.LowerCPLOAD(MCInsts);
        for (SmallVector<MCInst, 4>::iterator I = MCInsts.begin();
            I != MCInsts.end(); ++I)
            OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(*I);
    }
}

```

```
// Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp
...
static void CreateMCInst(MCInst& Inst, unsigned Opc, const MCOperand& Opnd0,
                        const MCOperand& Opnd1,
                        const MCOperand& Opnd2 = MCOperand()) {
    Inst.setOpcode(Opc);
    Inst.addOperand(Opnd0);
    Inst.addOperand(Opnd1);
    if (Opnd2.isValid())
        Inst.addOperand(Opnd2);
}

// Lower ".cpload $reg" to
// "addiu $gp, $zero, %hi(_gp_disp)"
// "shl    $gp, $gp, 16"
// "addiu $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"
// "addu  $gp, $gp, $t9"
void Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerCPLOAD(SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts) {
    MCOperand GPRreg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::GP);
    MCOperand T9Reg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::T9);
    MCOperand ZEROReg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::ZERO);
   StringRef SymName("_gp_disp");
    const MCSymbol *Sym = Ctx->GetOrCreateSymbol(SymName);
    const MCSymbolRefExpr *MCSym;

    MCSym = MCSymbolRefExpr::Create(Sym, MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI, *Ctx);
    MCOperand SymHi = MCOperand::CreateExpr(MCSym);
    MCSym = MCSymbolRefExpr::Create(Sym, MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO, *Ctx);
    MCOperand SymLo = MCOperand::CreateExpr(MCSym);

    MCInsts.resize(4);

    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[0], Cpu0::ADDIU, GPRreg, ZEROReg, SymHi);
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[1], Cpu0::SHL, GPRreg, GPRreg, MCOperand::CreateImm(16));
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[2], Cpu0::ADDIU, GPRreg, GPRreg, SymLo);
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[3], Cpu0::ADD, GPRreg, GPRreg, T9Reg);
}

// Lower ".cpstore offset" to "st $gp, offset($sp)".
void Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerCPSTORE(int64_t Offset,
                                   SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts) {
    assert(isInt<32>(Offset) && (Offset >= 0) &&
           "Imm operand of .cpstore must be a non-negative 32-bit value.");

    MCOperand SPReg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::SP), BaseReg = SPReg;
    MCOperand GPRreg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::GP);
    MCOperand ZEROReg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::ZERO);

    if (!isInt<16>(Offset)) {
        unsigned Hi = ((Offset + 0x8000) >> 16) & 0xffff;
        Offset &= 0xffff;
        MCOperand ATReg = MCOperand::CreateReg(Cpu0::AT);
        BaseReg = ATReg;

        // addiu    at,zero,hi
        // shl      at,at,16
        // add      at,at,sp
        MCInsts.resize(3);
    }
}
```

```

    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[0], Cpu0::ADDiu, ATReg, ZEROReg, MCOperand::CreateImm(Hi));
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[1], Cpu0::SHL, ATReg, ATReg, MCOperand::CreateImm(16));
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[2], Cpu0::ADD, ATReg, ATReg, SPReg);
}

MCInst St;
CreateMCInst(St, Cpu0::ST, GPReg, BaseReg, MCOperand::CreateImm(Offset));
MCInsts.push_back(St);
}

```

The above added code of Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp will call the LowerCPLOAD() and LowerCPRESTORE() when user run with `llc -filetype=obj`. The above added code of Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp take care the .cpload and .cprestore machine instructions. It translate pseudo asm .cpload into four machine instructions, and .cprestore into one machine instruction as below. As mentioned in “section Global variable”⁵. When the share library main() function be loaded, the loader will set the \$t9 value to \$gp when meet “**.cpload \$t9**”. After that, the \$gp value is \$t9 which point to main(), and the global variable address is the relative address to main(). The `_gp_disp` is zero as the following reason from Mips ABI.

```

// Lower ".cpload $reg" to
// "addiu $gp, $zero, %hi(_gp_disp)"
// "shl  $gp, $gp, 16"
// "addiu $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"
// "addu  $gp, $gp, $t9"

// Lower ".cprestore offset" to "st $gp, offset($sp)".

```

Note: // Mips ABI: `_gp_disp` After calculating the gp, a function allocates the local stack space and saves the gp on the stack, so it can be restored after subsequent function calls. In other words, the gp is a caller saved register.

...

`_gp_disp` represents the offset between the beginning of the function and the global offset table. Various optimizations are possible in this code example and the others that follow. For example, the calculation of gp need not be done for a position-independent function that is strictly local to an object module.

By run with `llc -filetype=obj`, the .cpload and .cprestore are translated into machine code as follows,

```

118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
obj ch8_2.bc -o ch8_2.cpu0.o
118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ hexdump  ch8_2.cpu0.o
...
// .cpload machine instructions "09 a0 00 00 to 13 aa 60 00"
0000030 00 0a 00 07 09 a0 00 00 1e aa 00 10 09 aa 00 00
0000040 13 aa 60 00 09 dd ff e0 00 2d 00 20 01 2d 00 1c
...

// .cpload machine instructions "09 a0 00 00 to 13 aa 60 00"
00000b0 09 dd 00 20 2c 00 00 00 09 a0 00 00 1e aa 00 10
00000c0 09 aa 00 00 13 aa 60 00 09 dd ff b8 01 ed 00 44
// .cprestore machine instruction " 01 ad 00 18"
00000d0 01 ad 00 18 09 20 00 00 01 2d 00 40 09 20 00 06
...

118-165-67-25:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_2.cpu0.s
...
.ent  _Z5sum_iiiiiii          # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii

```

```

_Z5sum_iiiiiii:
...
.cpload $t9 // assign $gp = $t9 by loader when loader load re-entry function
           // (shared library) of _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
...
.ent main # @main
...
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
...
.cprestore 24 // save $gp to 24($sp)
...

```

Run `llc -static` will call `jsub` instruction instead of `jalr` as follows,

```

118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=
asm ch8_2.bc -o ch8_2.cpu0.s
118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_2.cpu0.s
...
    jsub _Z5sum_iiiiiii
...

```

Run with `llc -obj`, you can find the Cx of “`jsub Cx`” is 0 since the Cx is calculated by linker as below. Mips has the same 0 in it’s `jal` instruction. The `ch8_1_2.cpp`, `ch8_1_3.cpp` and `ch8_1_4.cpp` are example code more for test.

```

// jsub _Z5sum_iiiiiii translate into 2B 00 00 00
00F0: 2B 00 00 00 01 2D 00 34 00 ED 00 3C 09 DD 00 40

```

8.7 Variable number of arguments

Until now, we support fixed number of arguments in formal function definition (Incoming Arguments). This section support variable number of arguments since C language support this feature. Run 8/7/Cpu0 with `ch8_3.cpp` to get the following,

```

// ch8_3.cpp
//#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

int sum_i(int amount, ...)
{
    int i = 0;
    int val = 0;
    int sum = 0;

    va_list vl;
    va_start(vl, amount);
    for (i = 0; i < amount; i++)
    {
        val = va_arg(vl, int);
        sum += val;
    }
    va_end(vl);

    return sum;
}

```



```

}

int main()
{
    int a = sum_i(6, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);
    // printf("a = %d\n", a);

    return a;
}

```

```

118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch8_3.bc -o ch8_3.cpu0.s

```

```

118-165-76-131:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_3.cpu0.s

```

```

.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_3.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiz
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiz,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiz          # @_Z5sum_iiz
_Z5sum_iiz:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,56,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -56
$tmp2:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 56
st $lr, 52($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp3:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
.cprestore 0
ld $2, %got(__stack_chk_guard)($gp)
ld $2, 0($2)
st $2, 48($sp) // 48($sp) = 0
ld $2, 56($sp) // amount
st $2, 44($sp) // amount
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 40($sp) // i = 0
st $2, 36($sp) // val = 0
st $2, 32($sp) // sum = 0
addiu $3, $sp, 48 // $3 = 48($sp)
st $3, 8($sp) // 8($sp) = 48($sp) = arg_ptr
st $2, 40($sp) // i = 0
addiu $2, $zero, 40 // $2 = 40
$BB0_1:                  # =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
ld $3, 44($sp) // $3 = amount
ld $4, 40($sp) // $4 = i
cmp $4, $3
jge $BB0_7 // i >= amount
jmp $BB0_2
$BB0_2:                  # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
// i < amount

```

```
ld $3, 8($sp) // $3 = arg_ptr
cmp $3, $2
jgt $BB0_4 // arg_ptr > 40
jmp $BB0_3
$BB0_3:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
// arg_ptr <= 40
addiu $4, $3, 8
ld $5, 20($sp) // *(20($sp)) = arg_offset = 12
st $4, 8($sp) // arg_ptr += 8
add $3, $5, $3 // $3 = (arg_ptr + arg_offset)
jmp $BB0_5
$BB0_4:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
ld $3, 16($sp)
addiu $4, $3, 8
st $4, 16($sp)
$BB0_5:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
ld $3, 0($3) // $3 = val = *(arg_ptr + arg_offset)
st $3, 36($sp)
ld $4, 32($sp) // $4 = sum
add $3, $4, $3
st $3, 32($sp) // sum += val
# BB#6:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
ld $3, 40($sp) // $3 = i
addiu $3, $3, 1
st $3, 40($sp) // i = i + 1
jmp $BB0_1
$BB0_7:
ld $2, %got(__stack_chk_guard)($gp)
ld $2, 0($2)
ld $3, 48($sp)
cmp $2, $3
jne $BB0_9
jmp $BB0_8
$BB0_8:                                     # %SP_return
ld $lr, 52($sp) # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 56
ret $lr
$BB0_9:                                     # %CallStackCheckFailBlk
ld $6, %call24(__stack_chk_fail)($gp)
jalr $6
ld $gp, 0($sp)
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z5sum_iiz
$tmp4:
.size _Z5sum_iiz, ($tmp4)-_Z5sum_iiz
.cfi_endproc

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,88,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
```

```

.set    nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -88
$tmp7:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 88
    st    $l1r, 84($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp8:
    .cfi_offset 14, -4
    .cpstore 32
    addiu $2, $zero, 0
    st    $2, 80($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 5
    st    $2, 20($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 4
    st    $2, 16($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 3
    st    $2, 12($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 2
    st    $2, 8($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 1
    st    $2, 4($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 6
    st    $2, 24($sp)
    st    $2, 0($sp)
    ld    $6, %call24(_Z5sum_iiz)($gp)
    jalr  $6
    ld    $gp, 32($sp)
    st    $2, 76($sp)
    ld    $l1r, 84($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 88
    ret   $l1r
.set    macro
.set    reorder
.end    main
$tmp9:
    .size main, ($tmp9)-main
    .cfi_endproc

```

We have problem in analysis of the output ch8_3.cpu0.s. We guess and try to analysis as follows. As above code, we get the first argument “amount” from “ld \$2, 56(\$sp)” since the stack size of the callee function “_Z5sum_iiz()” is 56. Next, check $i < \text{amount}$ in block \$BB0_1. If $i < \text{amount}$, than enter into \$BB0_2. We assume $\text{arg_ptr} < 40$ and the content of address 8(\$sp) is the arg_ptr . When it exits \$BB0_2 and enter into \$BB0_3, the register $(\$3 + \$5) = (\text{arg_ptr} + \text{arg_offset}=12)$ is point to the second argument and it do the sum += val in \$BB0_5. It do $i \text{ += } 1$ in \$BB0_6 and jump to \$BB0_1 enter into second round. The second round do as above again, it will get the third argument and add to sum in \$BB0_5 since the ptr_arg (16(\$sp)) is added 8 in the previous run. We assume the $\text{arg_prt} < 40$ but actually according the analysis the arg_prt is 48(\$sp) which > 40 , so the above analysis is not satisfied. The compare arg_prt with 40 is exist in llvm IR, and mips has the same translated output. So, we don’t know what’s wrong. We believe the $\text{arg} < 40$ is satisfied because the native Intel CPU has the $\text{arg_ptr} < 40$ in it’s assembly code and the Intel CPU native execution file can print correct result. You will see it soon in the bellow code. If the $\text{arg_prt} < 40$ is satisfied and $\ast(20(\$sp)) = \text{arg_offset} = 12$, then the assembly output is correct. The llvm IR and mips assembly output as follows,

```

118-165-78-221:InputFiles Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch8_3.bc -o ch8_3.ll
118-165-78-221:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_3.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch8_3.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:64-
f32:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:
32:64-S128"
target triple = "x86_64-apple-macosx10.8.0"

```

```
%struct.__va_list_tag = type { i32, i32, i8*, i8* }

define i32 @_Z5sum_iiz(i32 %amount, ...) nounwind uwtable ssp {
...
; <label>:8                                ; preds = %4
...
    %12 = icmp ule i32 %11, 40
    br i1 %12, label %13, label %19

118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_3.mips.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_3.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiz
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiz,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiz                # @_Z5sum_iiz
_Z5sum_iiz:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,72,$ra
.mask 0x80000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cpload $25
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -72
$tmp2:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 72
    sw $ra, 68($sp)            # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp3:
    .cfi_offset 31, -4
    .cpstore 16
    sw $7, 84($sp)
    sw $6, 80($sp)
    sw $5, 76($sp) // 76($sp) = arg[1]
    lw $2, %got(__stack_chk_guard)($gp)
    lw $2, 0($2)
    sw $2, 64($sp)
    sw $4, 60($sp) // 60($sp) = amount = arg[0]
    sw $zero, 56($sp) // i
    sw $zero, 52($sp) // val
    sw $zero, 48($sp) // sum
    addiu $2, $sp, 76
    sw $2, 24($sp) // 24($sp) = arg_ptr
    sw $zero, 56($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 40 // $2 = 40
    b $BB0_1
    nop
$BB0_5:                        # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
    lw $3, 0($3) // $3 = *arg_ptr
    sw $3, 52($sp) // val
    lw $4, 48($sp) // sum
    addu $3, $4, $3 //
    sw $3, 48($sp) // sum += val
    lw $3, 56($sp)
    addiu $3, $3, 1
```

```

    sw $3, 56($sp) // i += 1
$BB0_1:                                     # =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
    lw $3, 60($sp)
    lw $4, 56($sp)
    slt $3, $4, $3 // set if i < amount
    beq $3, $zero, $BB0_6 // i >= amount
    nop
# BB#2:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
    lw $3, 24($sp) // $3 = arg_ptr
    sltu $4, $2, $3 // set if 40 < arg_ptr
    bne $4, $zero, $BB0_4
    nop
# BB#3:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
                                     // arg_ptr <= 40
    addiu $4, $3, 8
    lw $5, 36($sp) // 36($sp) = 0, assume even though we didn't find the
                                     // 36($sp) is 0
    sw $4, 24($sp) // arg_ptr += 8
    addu $3, $5, $3 // arg_ptr + 0
    b $BB0_5
    nop
$BB0_4:                                     # in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
                                     // 40 < arg_ptr
    lw $3, 32($sp)
    addiu $4, $3, 8
    sw $4, 32($sp)
    b $BB0_5
    nop
$BB0_6:
    lw $2, %got(__stack_chk_guard)($gp)
    lw $2, 0($2)
    lw $3, 64($sp)
    bne $2, $3, $BB0_8
    nop
# BB#7:                                     # %SP_return
    lw $2, 48($sp)
    lw $ra, 68($sp) # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 72
    jr $ra
    nop
$BB0_8:                                     # %CallStackCheckFailBlk
    lw $25, %call16(__stack_chk_fail)($gp)
    jalr $25
    nop
    lw $gp, 16($sp)
    .set macro
    .set reorder
    .end _Z5sum_iiz
$tmp4:
    .size _Z5sum_iiz, ($tmp4)-_Z5sum_iiz
    .cfi_endproc

    .globl main
    .align 2
    .type main,@function
    .ent main # @main
main:
    .cfi_startproc

```

```
.frame $sp,64,$ra
.mask 0x80000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cpload $25
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -64
$tmp7:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 64
    sw $ra, 60($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp8:
    .cfi_offset 31, -4
    .cpstore 40
    sw $zero, 56($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 7
    sw $2, 28($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 6
    sw $2, 24($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 5
    sw $2, 20($sp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 4
    sw $2, 16($sp)
    addiu $4, $zero, 8
    sw $4, 32($sp)
    lw $25, %call16(_Z5sum_iiz)($gp)
    addiu $5, $zero, 1
    addiu $6, $zero, 2
    addiu $7, $zero, 3
    jalr $25
    nop
    lw $gp, 40($sp)
    sw $2, 52($sp)
    addu $2, $zero, $zero
    lw $ra, 60($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 64
    jr $ra
    nop
    .set macro
    .set reorder
    .end main
$tmp9:
    .size main, ($tmp9)-main
    .cfi_endproc
```

We have verified the translation of `ch8_3.cpp` is correct by add `printf` in `ch8_3.cpp` to get `ch8_3_3.cpp` and run with `lli llvm` interpreter. We also translate it into native Intel CPU code and get the correct print result. Following are the `ch8_3_3.cpp`, and `lli`, Intel native code run result.

```
// ch8_3_3.cpp
// clang -c ch8_3_3.cpp -emit-llvm -I/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/
Developer/Platforms/MacOSX.platform/Developer/SDKs/MacOSX10.8.sdk/usr/
include/ -o ch8_3_3.bc
// /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/lli
ch8_3_3.bc -o ch8_3_3.s
// clang++ ch8_3_3.s -o ch8_3_3.native
// ./ch8_3_3.native
// lldb -- ch8_3_3.native
```

```
// b main
// s
// ...
// print $rsp    ; print %rsp, choose $ instead of % in assembly code

// mips-linux-gnu-g++ -g ch8_3_3.cpp -o ch8_3_3 -static
// qemu-mips ch8_3_3
// mips-linux-gnu-g++ -S ch8_3_3.cpp
// cat ch8_3_3.s

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

int sum_i(int amount, ...)
{
    int i = 0;
    int val = 0;
    int sum = 0;

    va_list vl;
    va_start(vl, amount);
    for (i = 0; i < amount; i++)
    {
        val = va_arg(vl, int);
        sum += val;
    }
    va_end(vl);

    return sum;
}

int main()
{
    int a = sum_i(6, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);
    printf("a = %d\n", a);

    return a;
}

118-165-78-221:InputFiles Jonathan$ lli ch8_3_3.bc
a = 21

118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch8_3_3.cpp -emit-llvm -I
/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/Platforms/MacOSX.platform/
Developer/SDKs/MacOSX10.8.sdk/usr/include/ -o ch8_3_3.bc
118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc ch8_3_3.bc -o ch8_3_3.s
118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang++ ch8_3_3.s -o ch8_3_3.native
118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ ./ch8_3_3.native
a = 21

118-165-67-185:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch8_3_3.s
...
LBB0_3:                                     ## =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
    movl 216(%rsp), %eax
    cmpl 220(%rsp), %eax
    jge LBB0_8    // i >= amount
## BB#4:                                     ##   in Loop: Header=BB0_3 Depth=1
```

```
movl 176(%rsp), %eax // i < amount
cmpl $40, %eax // arg_ptr < 40
ja LBB0_6
```

We have run mips qemu on Linux by gcc. It get the correct print result, and the mips code has no analysis problem since it hasn't the `arg_ptr < 40` in assembly output. The qemu mips gcc result as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ qemu-mips ch8_3_3
a = 21
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ mips-linux-gnu-g++ -g ch8_3_3.cpp -o ch8_3_3 -static
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ qemu-mips ch8_3_3
a = 21
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ mips-linux-gnu-g++ -S ch8_3_3.cpp
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ cat ch8_3_3.s
.file 1 "ch8_3_3.cpp"
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.gnu_attribute 4, 1
.abicalls
.option pic0
.text
.align 2
.globl _Z5sum_iiz
$LFEB0 = .
.set nomips16
.ent _Z5sum_iiz
.type _Z5sum_iiz, @function
_Z5sum_iiz:
.frame $fp,32,$31 # vars= 16, regs= 1/0, args= 0, gp= 8
.mask 0x40000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro

    addiu $sp,$sp,-32
$LCFI0:
    sw $fp,28($sp)
$LCFI1:
    move $fp,$sp
$LCFI2:
    sw $5,36($fp) // arg[1]
    sw $6,40($fp)
    sw $7,44($fp)
    sw $4,32($fp) // amount = arg[0]
    sw $0,16($fp) // i = 0
    sw $0,12($fp) // val = 0
    sw $0,8($fp) // sum = 0
    addiu $2,$fp,36
    sw $2,20($fp) // arg_ptr = &arg[1]
    sw $0,16($fp)
    j $L2
    nop

$L3:
    // i < amount
    lw $2,20($fp) // arg_ptr
    addiu $3,$2,4
    sw $3,20($fp) // arg_ptr += 4
    lw $2,0($2) // $2 = *arg_ptr
```



```

    sw  $2,12($fp)  // val = *arg_ptr
    lw  $3,8($fp)
    lw  $2,12($fp)
    addu $2,$3,$2
    sw  $2,8($fp)   // sum += val
    lw  $2,16($fp)
    addiu $2,$2,1
    sw  $2,16($fp)  // i += 1
$L2:
    lw  $3,16($fp)
    lw  $2,32($fp)
    slt $2,$3,$2    // set if i < amount
    andi $2,$2,0x00ff
    bne $2,$0,$L3
    nop

    lw  $2,8($fp)   // i >= amount
    move $sp,$fp
    lw  $fp,28($sp)
    addiu $sp,$sp,32
    j  $31
    nop

.set  macro
.set  reorder
.end  _Z5sum_iiz
$LFE0:
.size _Z5sum_iiz, .-_Z5sum_iiz
.rdata
.align 2
$LC0:
.ascii "a = %d\012\000"
.text
.align 2
.globl main
$LFB1 = .
.set  nomips16
.ent  main
.type main, @function
main:
.frame $fp,56,$31    # vars= 8, regs= 2/0, args= 32, gp= 8
.mask 0xc0000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set  noreorder
.set  nomacro

    addiu $sp,$sp,-56
$LCFI3:
    sw  $31,52($sp)
$LCFI4:
    sw  $fp,48($sp)
$LCFI5:
    move $fp,$sp
$LCFI6:
    li  $2,4         # 0x4
    sw  $2,16($sp)
    li  $2,5         # 0x5
    sw  $2,20($sp)

```

```
li $2,6      # 0x6
sw $2,24($sp)
li $4,6      # 0x6
li $5,1      # 0x1
li $6,2      # 0x2
li $7,3      # 0x3
jal _Z5sum_iiz
nop

sw $2,40($fp)
lui $2,%hi($LC0)
addiu $4,$2,%lo($LC0)
lw $5,40($fp)
jal printf
nop

lw $2,40($fp)
move $sp,$fp
lw $31,52($sp)
lw $fp,48($sp)
addiu $sp,$sp,56
j $31
nop

.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$LFEL:
.size main, .-main
.section .eh_frame,"a",@progbits
$Lframe1:
.4byte $LECIE1-$LSCIE1
$LSCIE1:
.4byte 0x0
.byte 0x1
.globl __gxx_personality_v0
.ascii "zP\000"
.uleb128 0x1
.sleb128 -4
.byte 0x1f
.uleb128 0x5
.byte 0x0
.4byte __gxx_personality_v0
.byte 0xc
.uleb128 0x1d
.uleb128 0x0
.align 2
$LECIE1:
$LSFDE3:
.4byte $LEFDE3-$LASFDE3
$LASFDE3:
.4byte $LASFDE3-$Lframe1
.4byte $LFB1
.4byte $LFEL-$LFB1
.uleb128 0x0
.byte 0x4
.4byte $LCFI3-$LFB1
.byte 0xe
```

```

.uleb128 0x38
.byte 0x4
.4byte $LCFI5-$LCFI3
.byte 0x11
.uleb128 0x1e
.sleb128 2
.byte 0x11
.uleb128 0x1f
.sleb128 1
.byte 0x4
.4byte $LCFI6-$LCFI5
.byte 0xd
.uleb128 0x1e
.align 2
$LEFDE3:
.ident "GCC: (GNU) 4.4.6"
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$

```

To support variable number of arguments, the following code needed to add in 8/7/Cpu0. The ch8_3_2.cpp is C++ template example code, it can be translated into cpu0 backend code too.

```

// Cpu0TargetLowering.cpp
...
Cpu0TargetLowering::
Cpu0TargetLowering(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM)
: TargetLowering(TM, new Cpu0TargetObjectFile()),
  Subtarget(&TM.getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()) {
    ...
    setOperationAction(ISD::VASTART,          MVT::Other, Custom);
    ...
    // Support va_arg(): variable numbers (not fixed numbers) of arguments
    // (parameters) for function all
    setOperationAction(ISD::VAARG,            MVT::Other, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::VACOPY,           MVT::Other, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::VAEND,           MVT::Other, Expand);
    ...
}
...

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
        ...
        case ISD::VASTART:          return LowerVASTART(Op, DAG);
    }
    return SDValue();
}

...
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerVASTART(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *FuncInfo = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    DebugLoc dl = Op.getDebugLoc();
    SDValue FI = DAG.getFrameIndex(FuncInfo->getVarArgsFrameIndex(),
                                   getPointerTy());
}

```

```
// vastart just stores the address of the VarArgsFrameIndex slot into the
// memory location argument.
const Value *SV = cast<SrcValueSDNode>(Op.getOperand(2))->getValue();
return DAG.getStore(Op.getOperand(0), dl, FI, Op.getOperand(1),
    MachinePointerInfo(SV), false, false, 0);
}

// ch8_3_2.cpp
...
//#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

template<class T>
T sum(T amount, ...)
{
    T i = 0;
    T val = 0;
    T sum = 0;

    va_list vl;
    va_start(vl, amount);
    for (i = 0; i < amount; i++)
    {
        val = va_arg(vl, T);
        sum += val;
    }
    va_end(vl);

    return sum;
}

int main()
{
    int a = sum<int>(6, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);
    // printf("a = %d\n", a);

    return a;
}
```

Mips qemu reference ⁶.

8.8 Verify DIV for operator %

Now, let's run 8/7/Cpu0 with 4_6_2.cpp to get the result as below. It translate “(b+1)%c” into “div \$zero, \$3, \$2” and “mfhi \$2”.

```
// ch4_6_2.cpp
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    int b = 11;
    // unsigned int b = 11;
    int c = rand();
```

⁶ <http://developer.mips.com/clang-llvm/>

```
b = (b+1)%c;

return b;
}

118-165-70-242:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch4_6_2.cpp -I/Applications/
Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/Platforms/MacOSX.platform/Developer/SDKs/
MacOSX10.8.sdk/usr/include/ -emit-llvm -o ch4_6_2.bc
118-165-70-242:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake
_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_6_2.bc -o ch4_6_2.cpu0.s
118-165-70-242:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat ch4_6_2.cpu0.s
...
div $zero, $3, $2
mfhi $2
...
```

8.9 Summary of this chapter

Until now, we have 5,700 lines of source code around in 8/7/Cpu0. The cpu0 backend code now can take care the integer function call and control statement just like the llvm front end tutorial example code. Look back the chapter of “Back end structure”, there are 3,000 lines of source code with taking three instructions only. With this 87% more of code, it can translate tens of instructions, global variable, control flow statement and function call.

ELF

Cpu0 backend generated the ELF format of obj. The ELF (Executable and Linkable Format) is a common standard file format for executables, object code, shared libraries and core dumps. First published in the System V Application Binary Interface specification, and later in the Tool Interface Standard, it was quickly accepted among different vendors of Unix systems. In 1999 it was chosen as the standard binary file format for Unix and Unix-like systems on x86 by the x86open project. Please reference ¹.

The binary encode of cpu0 instruction set in obj has been checked in the previous chapters. But we didn't dig into the ELF file format like elf header and relocation record at that time. This chapter will use the binutils which has been installed in "sub-section Install other tools on iMac" of Appendix A: "Installing LLVM" ² to analysis cpu0 ELF file. You will learn the objdump, readelf, ..., tools and understand the ELF file format itself through using these tools to analyze the cpu0 generated obj in this chapter. LLVM has the llvm-objdump tool which like objdump but it's only support the native CPU. The binutils support other CPU ELF dump as a cross compiler tool chains. Linux platform has binutils already and no need to install it further. We use Linux binutils in this chapter just because iMac will display Chinese text. The iMac corresponding binutils have no problem except it use add g in command, for example, use gobjdump instead of objdump, and display your area language instead of pure English.

The binutils tool we use is not a part of llvm tools, but it's a powerful tool in ELF analysis. This chapter introduce the tool to readers since we think it is a valuable knowledge in this popular ELF format and the ELF binutils analysis tool. An LLVM compiler engineer has the responsibility to analyze the ELF since the obj is need to be handled by linker or loader later. With this tool, you can verify your generated ELF format.

The cpu0 author has published a "System Software" book which introduce the topics of assembler, linker, loader, compiler and OS in concept, and at same time demonstrate how to use binutils and gcc to analysis ELF through the example code in his book. It's a Chinese book of "System Software" in concept and practice. This book does the real analysis through binutils. The "System Software"³ written by Beck is a famous book in concept of telling readers what is the compiler output, what is the linker output, what is the loader output, and how they work together. But it covers the concept only. You can reference it to understand how the "**Relocation Record**" works if you need to refresh or learning this knowledge for this chapter.

⁴, ⁵, ⁶ are the Chinese documents available from the cpu0 author on web site.

9.1 ELF format

ELF is a format used both in obj and executable file. So, there are two views in it as *ELF file format overview*.

¹ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Executable_and_Linkable_Format

² <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/install.html#install-other-tools-on-imac>

³ Leland Beck, System Software: An Introduction to Systems Programming.

⁴ <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:aout>

⁵ <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:objfile>

⁶ <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:elf>

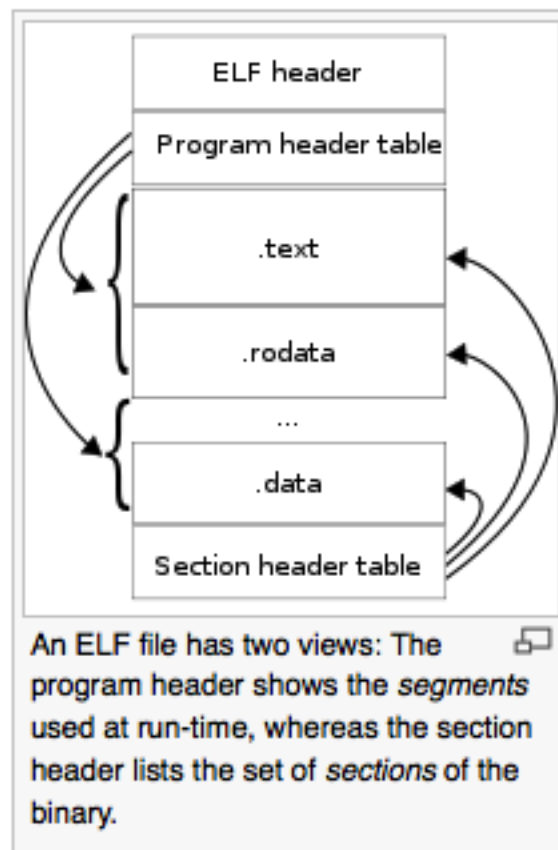


Figure 9.1: ELF file format overview

As *ELF file format overview*, the “Section header table” include sections .text, .rodata, ..., .data which are sections layout for code, read only data, ..., and read/write data. “Program header table” include segments include run time code and data. The definition of segments is run time layout for code and data, and sections is link time layout for code and data.

9.2 ELF header and Section header table

Let’s run 7/7/Cpu0 with ch6_1.cpp, and dump ELF header information by `readelf -h` to see what information the ELF header contains.

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.o
```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -h ch6_1.cpu0.o
ELF Header:
  Magic:      7f 45 4c 46 01 02 01 08 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
  Class:                      ELF32
  Data:                      2's complement, big endian
  Version:                    1 (current)
  OS/ABI:                     UNIX - IRIX
  ABI Version:                0
  Type:                       REL (Relocatable file)
  Machine:                    <unknown>: 0xc9
  Version:                    0x1
  Entry point address:        0x0
  Start of program headers:    0 (bytes into file)
  Start of section headers:    212 (bytes into file)
  Flags:                      0x70000001
  Size of this header:         52 (bytes)
  Size of program headers:     0 (bytes)
  Number of program headers:    0
  Size of section headers:     40 (bytes)
  Number of section headers:    10
  Section header string table index: 7
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$
```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.mips.o
```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -h ch6_1.mips.o
ELF Header:
  Magic:      7f 45 4c 46 01 02 01 08 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
  Class:                      ELF32
  Data:                      2's complement, big endian
  Version:                    1 (current)
  OS/ABI:                     UNIX - IRIX
  ABI Version:                0
  Type:                       REL (Relocatable file)
  Machine:                    MIPS R3000
  Version:                    0x1
  Entry point address:        0x0
  Start of program headers:    0 (bytes into file)
  Start of section headers:    212 (bytes into file)
  Flags:                      0x70000001
  Size of this header:         52 (bytes)
  Size of program headers:     0 (bytes)
```

```
Number of program headers:      0
Size of section headers:       40 (bytes)
Number of section headers:     11
Section header string table index: 8
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$
```

As above ELF header display, it contains information of magic number, version, ABI, ..., . The Machine field of cpu0 is unknown while mips is MIPS32R3000. It is because cpu0 is not a popular CPU recognized by utility readelf. Let's check ELF segments information as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -l ch6_1.cpu0.o
```

There are no program headers in this file.

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$
```

The result is in expectation because cpu0 obj is for link only, not for execution. So, the segments is empty. Check ELF sections information as follows. It contains offset and size information for every section.

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -S ch6_1.cpu0.o
There are 10 section headers, starting at offset 0xd4:
```

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Flg	Lk	Inf	Al
[0]		NULL	00000000	000000	000000	00		0	0	0
[1]	.text	PROGBITS	00000000	000034	000034	00	AX	0	0	4
[2]	.rel.text	REL	00000000	000310	000018	08		8	1	4
[3]	.data	PROGBITS	00000000	000068	000004	00	WA	0	0	4
[4]	.bss	NOBITS	00000000	00006c	000000	00	WA	0	0	4
[5]	.eh_frame	PROGBITS	00000000	00006c	000028	00	A	0	0	4
[6]	.rel.eh_frame	REL	00000000	000328	000008	08		8	5	4
[7]	.shstrtab	STRTAB	00000000	000094	00003e	00		0	0	1
[8]	.symtab	SYMTAB	00000000	000264	000090	10		9	6	4
[9]	.strtab	STRTAB	00000000	0002f4	00001b	00		0	0	1

Key to Flags:

W (write), A (alloc), X (execute), M (merge), S (strings)
I (info), L (link order), G (group), T (TLS), E (exclude), x (unknown)
O (extra OS processing required) o (OS specific), p (processor specific)

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$
```

9.3 Relocation Record

The cpu0 backend translate global variable as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ clang -c ch6_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch6_1.bc
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.s
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ cat ch6_1.cpu0.s
```

```
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch6_1.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                                # @main
main:
```

```

.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cpload $t9
...
ld $2, %got(gI)($gp)
...
.type gI,@object          # @gI
.data
.globl gI
.align 2
gI:
.4byte 100                # 0x64
.size gI, 4

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.o
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ objdump -s ch6_1.cpu0.o

```

```
ch6_1.cpu0.o:      file format elf32-big
```

Contents of section .text:

```

// .cpload machine instruction
0000 09a00000 1eaa0010 09aa0000 13aa6000 .....`.
...
0020 002a0000 00220000 012d0000 09dd0008 .*..."...-.....
...

```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ Jonathan$
```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -tr ch6_1.cpu0.o
There are 10 section headers, starting at offset 0xd4:
```

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Lk	Inf	Al
		Flags							
[0]									
	NULL		00000000	000000	000000	00	0	0	0
	[00000000]:								
[1]	.text								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000034	000034	00	0	0	4
	[00000006]:	ALLOC, EXEC							
[2]	.rel.text								
	REL		00000000	000310	000018	08	8	1	4
	[00000000]:								
[3]	.data								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000068	000004	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[4]	.bss								
	NOBITS		00000000	00006c	000000	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[5]	.eh_frame								
	PROGBITS		00000000	00006c	000028	00	0	0	4
	[00000002]:	ALLOC							
[6]	.rel.eh_frame								
	REL		00000000	000328	000008	08	8	5	4

```
    [00000000]:
[ 7] .shstrtab
    STRTAB          00000000 000094 00003e 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:
[ 8] .symtab
    SYMTAB          00000000 000264 000090 10    9    6    4
    [00000000]:
[ 9] .strtab
    STRTAB          00000000 0002f4 00001b 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:
```

Relocation section '.rel.text' at offset 0x310 contains 3 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
00000000	00000805	unrecognized: 5	00000000	_gp_disp
00000008	00000806	unrecognized: 6	00000000	_gp_disp
00000020	00000609	unrecognized: 9	00000000	gI

Relocation section '.rel.eh_frame' at offset 0x328 contains 1 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
0000001c	00000202	unrecognized: 2	00000000	.text

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]\$ readelf -tr ch6_1.mips.o

There are 10 section headers, starting at offset 0xd0:

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Lk	Inf	Al
[0]		Flags							
	NULL		00000000	000000	000000	00	0	0	0
	[00000000]:								
[1]	.text								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000034	000030	00	0	0	4
	[00000006]:	ALLOC, EXEC							
[2]	.rel.text								
	REL		00000000	00030c	000018	08	8	1	4
	[00000000]:								
[3]	.data								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000064	000004	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[4]	.bss								
	NOBITS		00000000	000068	000000	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[5]	.eh_frame								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000068	000028	00	0	0	4
	[00000002]:	ALLOC							
[6]	.rel.eh_frame								
	REL		00000000	000324	000008	08	8	5	4
	[00000000]:								
[7]	.shstrtab								
	STRTAB		00000000	000090	00003e	00	0	0	1
	[00000000]:								
[8]	.symtab								
	SYMTAB		00000000	000260	000090	10	9	6	4
	[00000000]:								
[9]	.strtab								
	STRTAB		00000000	0002f0	00001b	00	0	0	1
	[00000000]:								

Relocation section `'.rel.text'` at offset 0x30c contains 3 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
00000000	00000805	R_MIPS_HI16	00000000	_gp_disp
00000004	00000806	R_MIPS_LO16	00000000	_gp_disp
00000018	00000609	R_MIPS_GOT16	00000000	gI

Relocation section `'.rel.eh_frame'` at offset 0x324 contains 1 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
0000001c	00000202	R_MIPS_32	00000000	.text

As depicted in [section Handle \\$gp register in PIC addressing mode](#), it translate **“cpload %reg”** into the following.

```
// Lower ".cpload $reg" to
// "addiu $gp, $zero, %hi(_gp_disp)"
// "shl $gp, $gp, 16"
// "addiu $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"
// "addu $gp, $gp, $t9"
```

The `_gp_disp` value is determined by loader. So, it's undefined in obj. You can find the Relocation Records for offset 0 and 8 of `.text` section referred to `_gp_disp` value. The offset 0 and 8 of `.text` section are instructions `"addiu $gp, $zero, %hi(_gp_disp)"` and `"addiu $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"` and their corresponding obj encode are 09a00000 and 09aa0000. The obj translate the `%hi(_gp_disp)` and `%lo(_gp_disp)` into 0 since when loader load this obj into memory, loader will know the `_gp_disp` value at run time and will update these two offset relocation records into the correct offset value. You can check the `cpu0` of `%hi(_gp_disp)` and `%lo(_gp_disp)` are correct by above mips Relocation Records of `R_MIPS_HI(_gp_disp)` and `R_MIPS_LO(_gp_disp)` even though the `cpu0` is not a CPU recognized by `greasdf` utility. The instruction **“ld \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp)”** is same since we don't know what the address of `.data` section variable will load to. So, translate the address to 0 and made a relocation record on 0x00000020 of `.text` section. Loader will change this address too.

Run with `ch8_3_3.cpp` will get the unknown result in `_Z5sum_iiz` and other symbol reference as below. Loader or linker will take care them according the relocation records compiler generated.

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch8_3_3.bc -o ch8_3_3.
cpu0.o
```

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -tr ch8_3_3.cpu0.o
```

There are 11 section headers, starting at offset 0x248:

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Lk	Inf	Al
[0]	NULL		00000000	000000	000000	00	0	0	0
	[00000000]:								
[1]	.text	PROGBITS	00000000	000034	000178	00	0	0	4
	[00000006]:	ALLOC, EXEC							
[2]	.rel.text	REL	00000000	000538	000058	08	9	1	4
	[00000000]:								
[3]	.data	PROGBITS	00000000	0001ac	000000	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[4]	.bss	NOBITS	00000000	0001ac	000000	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]:	WRITE, ALLOC							
[5]	.rodata.str1.1								

```

    PROGBITS          00000000 0001ac 000008 01    0    0    1
    [00000032]: ALLOC, MERGE, STRINGS
[ 6] .eh_frame
    PROGBITS          00000000 0001b4 000044 00    0    0    4
    [00000002]: ALLOC
[ 7] .rel.eh_frame
    REL               00000000 000590 000010 08    9    6    4
    [00000000]:
[ 8] .shstrtab
    STRTAB            00000000 0001f8 00004d 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:
[ 9] .symtab
    SYMTAB            00000000 000400 0000e0 10   10    8    4
    [00000000]:
[10] .strtab
    STRTAB            00000000 0004e0 000055 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:

```

Relocation section '.rel.text' at offset 0x538 contains 11 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
00000000	00000c05	unrecognized: 5	00000000	__gp_disp
00000008	00000c06	unrecognized: 6	00000000	__gp_disp
0000001c	00000b09	unrecognized: 9	00000000	__stack_chk_guard
000000b8	00000b09	unrecognized: 9	00000000	__stack_chk_guard
000000dc	00000a0b	unrecognized: b	00000000	__stack_chk_fail
000000e8	00000c05	unrecognized: 5	00000000	__gp_disp
000000f0	00000c06	unrecognized: 6	00000000	__gp_disp
00000140	0000080b	unrecognized: b	00000000	__Z5sum_iiz
00000154	00000209	unrecognized: 9	00000000	\$.str
00000158	00000206	unrecognized: 6	00000000	\$.str
00000160	00000d0b	unrecognized: b	00000000	printf

Relocation section '.rel.eh_frame' at offset 0x590 contains 2 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
0000001c	00000302	unrecognized: 2	00000000	\$.text
00000034	00000302	unrecognized: 2	00000000	\$.text

```

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch8_3_3.bc -o ch8_3_3.
mips.o

```

```

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ readelf -tr ch8_3_3.mips.o

```

There are 11 section headers, starting at offset 0x254:

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Lk	Inf	Al
	Flags								
[0]									
	NULL		00000000	000000	000000	00	0	0	0
	[00000000]:								
[1]	\$.text								
	PROGBITS		00000000	000034	000184	00	0	0	4
	[00000006]: ALLOC, EXEC								
[2]	\$.rel.text								
	REL		00000000	000544	000058	08	9	1	4
	[00000000]:								
[3]	\$.data								
	PROGBITS		00000000	0001b8	000000	00	0	0	4
	[00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC								

```

[ 4] .bss
    NOBITS          00000000 0001b8 000000 00    0    0    4
    [00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC
[ 5] .rodata.str1.1
    PROGBITS        00000000 0001b8 000008 01    0    0    1
    [00000032]: ALLOC, MERGE, STRINGS
[ 6] .eh_frame
    PROGBITS        00000000 0001c0 000044 00    0    0    4
    [00000002]: ALLOC
[ 7] .rel.eh_frame
    REL             00000000 00059c 000010 08    9    6    4
    [00000000]:
[ 8] .shstrtab
    STRTAB          00000000 000204 00004d 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:
[ 9] .symtab
    SYMTAB          00000000 00040c 0000e0 10   10    8    4
    [00000000]:
[10] .strtab
    STRTAB          00000000 0004ec 000055 00    0    0    1
    [00000000]:

```

Relocation section `' .rel.text '` at offset 0x544 contains 11 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
00000000	00000c05	R_MIPS_HI16	00000000	__gp_disp
00000004	00000c06	R_MIPS_LO16	00000000	__gp_disp
00000024	00000b09	R_MIPS_GOT16	00000000	__stack_chk_guard
000000c8	00000b09	R_MIPS_GOT16	00000000	__stack_chk_guard
000000f0	00000a0b	R_MIPS_CALL16	00000000	__stack_chk_fail
00000100	00000c05	R_MIPS_HI16	00000000	__gp_disp
00000104	00000c06	R_MIPS_LO16	00000000	__gp_disp
00000134	0000080b	R_MIPS_CALL16	00000000	_Z5sum_iiz
00000154	00000209	R_MIPS_GOT16	00000000	\$.str
00000158	00000206	R_MIPS_LO16	00000000	\$.str
0000015c	00000d0b	R_MIPS_CALL16	00000000	printf

Relocation section `' .rel.eh_frame '` at offset 0x59c contains 2 entries:

Offset	Info	Type	Sym.Value	Sym. Name
0000001c	00000302	R_MIPS_32	00000000	.text
00000034	00000302	R_MIPS_32	00000000	.text

[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]\$

9.4 Cpu0 ELF related files

Files `Cpu0ELFObjectWrite.cpp` and `Cpu0MC*.cpp` are the files take care the obj format. Most obj code translation are defined by `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` and `Cpu0RegisterInfo.td`. With these td description, LLVM translate the instruction into obj format automatically.

9.5 lld

The lld is a project of LLVM linker. It's under development and we cannot finish the installation by following the web site direction. Even with this, it's really make sense to develop a new linker according it's web site information. Please

visit the web site ⁷.

⁷ <http://lld.llvm.org/>

APPENDIX A: GETTING STARTED: INSTALLING LLVM AND THE CPU0 EXAMPLE CODE

In this chapter, we will run through how to set up LLVM using if you are using Mac OS X or Linux. When discussing Mac OS X, we are using Apple's Xcode IDE (version 4.5.1) running on Mac OS X Mountain Lion (version 10.8) to modify and build LLVM from source, and we will be debugging using lldb. We cannot debug our LLVM builds within Xcode at the moment, but if you have experience with this, please contact us and help us build documentation that covers this. For Linux machines, we are building and debugging (using gdb) our LLVM installations on a Fedora 17 system. We will not be using an IDE for Linux, but once again, if you have experience building/ debugging LLVM using Eclipse or other major IDEs, please contact the authors. For information on using `cmake` to build LLVM, please refer to the "Building LLVM with CMake"¹ documentation for further information. We are using `cmake` version 2.8.9.

We will install two `llvm` directories in this chapter. One is the directory `llvm/3.1/` which contains the `clang`, `clang++` compiler we will use to translate the C/C++ input file into `llvm` IR. The other is the directory `llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1` which contains our `cpu0` backend program and without `clang` and `clang++`.

Todo

Find information on debugging LLVM within Xcode for Macs.

Todo

Find information on building/debugging LLVM within Eclipse for Linux.

10.1 Setting Up Your Mac

10.1.1 Installing LLVM, Xcode and cmake

Todo

Fix centering for figure captions.

¹ <http://llvm.org/docs/CMake.html?highlight=cmake>

Please download LLVM version 3.1 (llvm, clang, compiler-rt) from the “LLVM Download Page”². Then extract them using `tar -zxvf {llvm-3.1.src.tar, clang-3.1.src.tar, compiler-rt-3.1.src.tar}`, and change the llvm source code root directory into src. After that, move the clang source code to src/tools/clang, and move the compiler-rt source to src/project/compiler-rt as shown in *LLVM, clang, compiler-rt source code positions on Mac OS X*.

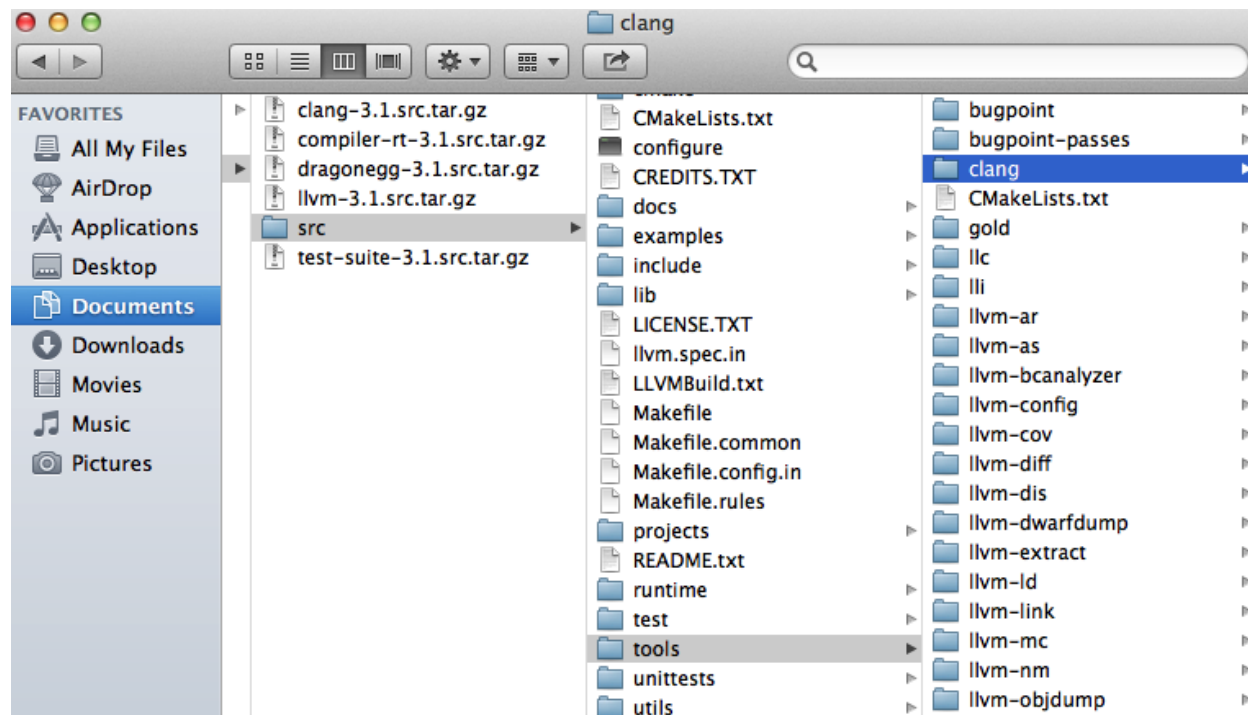


Figure 10.1: LLVM, clang, compiler-rt source code positions on Mac OS X

Next, copy the LLVM source to `/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/src` by executing the terminal command `cp -rf /Users/Jonathan/Documents/llvmSrc/src /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/..`.

Install Xcode from the Mac App Store. Then install cmake, which can be found here:³ Before installing cmake, make sure you can install applications you download from the Internet. Open “System Preferences”->“Security & Privacy.” Click the lock to make changes, and under “Allow applications downloaded from:” select the radio button next to “Anywhere.” See *Adjusting Mac OS X security settings to allow cmake installation*. below for an illustration. You may want to revert this setting after installing cmake.

Alternatively, you can mount the cmake .dmg image file you downloaded, right -click (or control-click) the cmake .pkg package file and click “Open.” Mac OS X will ask you if you are sure you want to install this package, and you can click “Open” to start the installer.

10.1.2 Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake Graphic UI

We install llvm source code with clang on directory `/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/` in last section. Now, will generate the LLVM.xcodeproj in this chapter.

Currently, we cannot do debug by lldb with cmake graphic UI operations depicted in this section, but we can do debug by lldb with “section Create LLVM.xcodeproj of supporting cpu0 by terminal cmake command”⁴. Even with that,

² <http://llvm.org/releases/download.html#3.1>

³ <http://www.cmake.org/cmake/resources/software.html>

⁴ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/install.html#create-llvm-xcodeproj-of-supporting-cpu0-by-terminal-cmake-command>

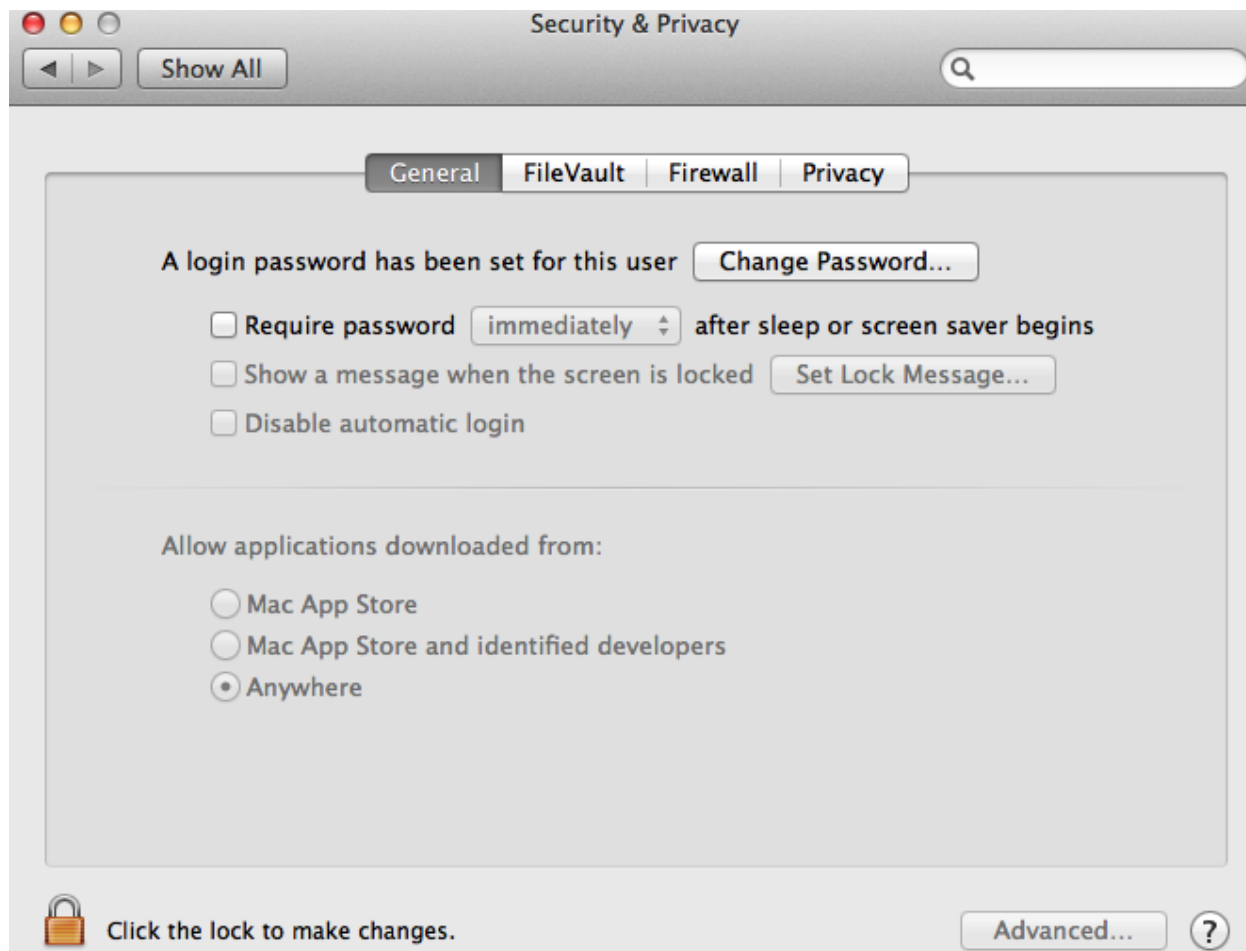


Figure 10.2: Adjusting Mac OS X security settings to allow cmake installation.

let's build LLVM project with cmake graphic UI since this LLVM directory contains the release version for clang and clang++ execution file. First, create LLVM.xcodeproj as *Start to create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake*, then click **configure** button to enter *Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake – Set option to generate Xcode project*, and then click **Done** button to get *Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake – Before Adjust CMAKE_INSTALL_NAME_TOOL*.

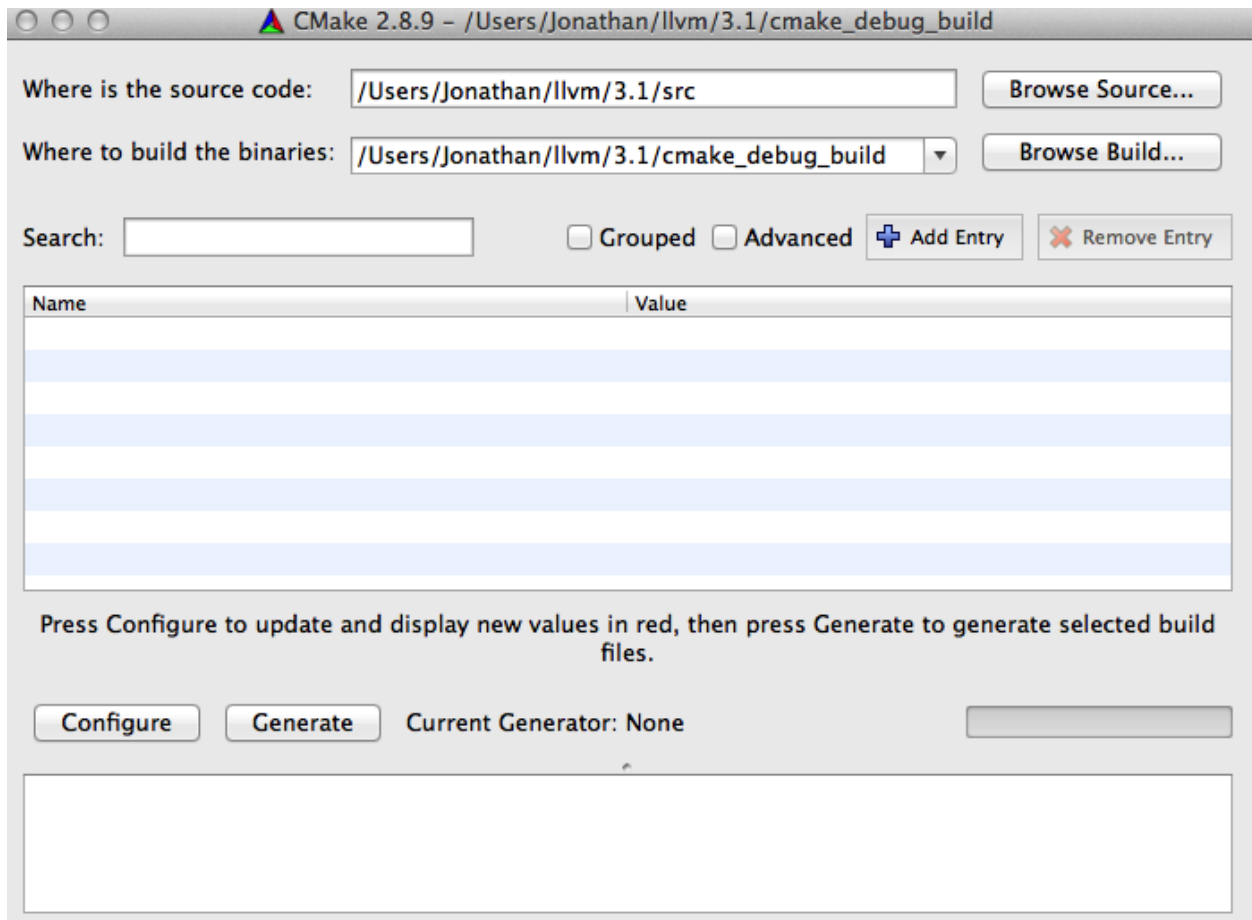


Figure 10.3: Start to create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake

Click OK from *Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake – Before Adjust CMAKE_INSTALL_NAME_TOOL* and select Cmake 2.8-9.app for CMAKE_INSTALL_NAME_TOOL by click the right side button "... of that row to get *Select Cmake 2.8-9.app*.

Click Configure button to get *Click cmake Configure button first time*.

Check CLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES, LLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES, and uncheck LLVM_ENABLE_PIC as *Check CLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES, LLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES, and uncheck LLVM_ENABLE_PIC in cmake*.

Click Configure button again. If the output result message has no red color, then click Generate button to get *Click cmake Generate button second time*.

10.1.3 Build llvm by Xcode

Now, LLVM.xcodeproj is created. Open the cmake_debug_build/LLVM.xcodeproj by Xcode and click menu **Product – Build** as *Click Build button to build LLVM.xcodeproj by Xcode*.

After few minutes of build, the clang, llc, llvm-as, ..., can be found in cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/ as follows.

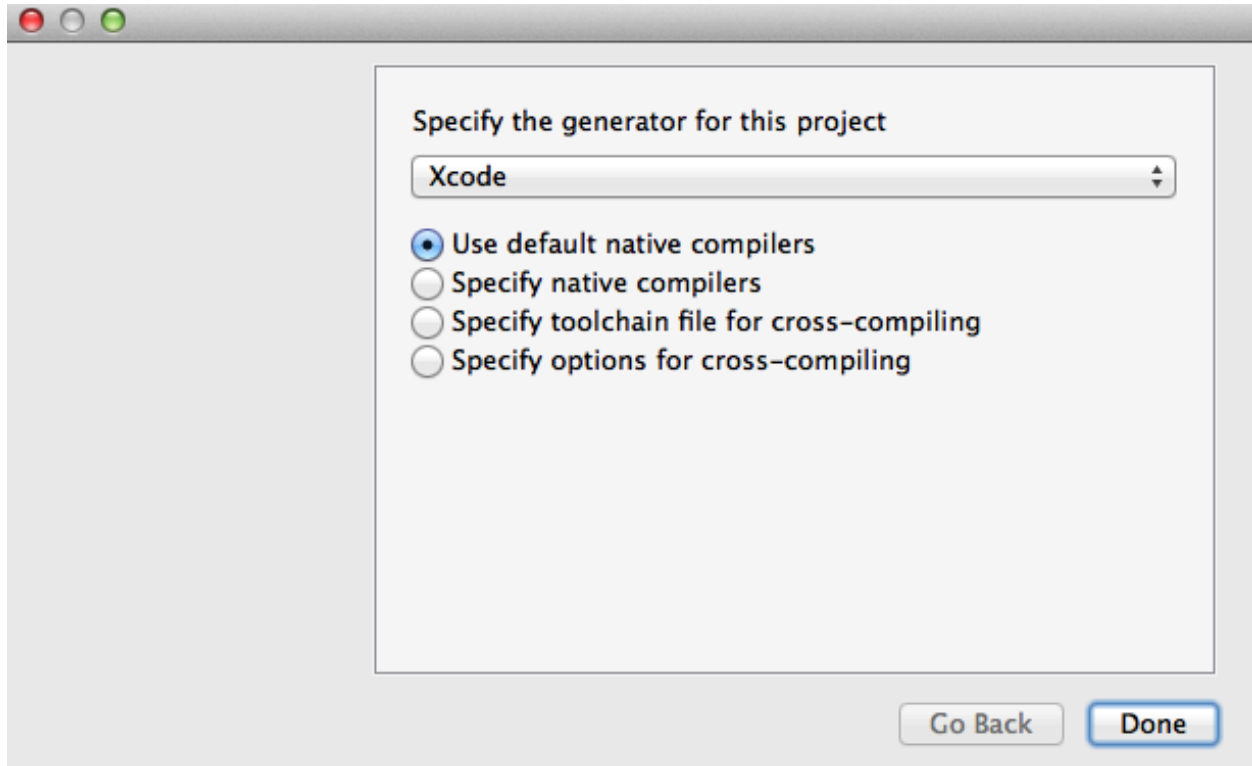


Figure 10.4: Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake – Set option to generate Xcode project

```
118-165-65-128:Debug Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug
118-165-65-128:Debug Jonathan$ ls
BrainF          clang           llvm-ld
ExceptionDemo   clang++         llvm-link
Fibonacci       clang-check     llvm-mc
FileCheck       clang-interpret llvm-nm
FileUpdate      clang-tblgen    llvm-objdump
HowToUseJIT     count          llvm-prof
Kaleidoscope-Ch2 diagtool        llvm-ranlib
Kaleidoscope-Ch3 llc             llvm-readobj
Kaleidoscope-Ch4 lli            llvm-rtdyld
Kaleidoscope-Ch5 llvm-ar         llvm-size
Kaleidoscope-Ch6 llvm-as         llvm-stress
Kaleidoscope-Ch7 llvm-bcanalyzer llvm-stub
ModuleMaker     llvm-config     llvm-tblgen
ParallelJIT     llvm-cov        macho-dump
arcmnt-test     llvm-diff       not
bugpoint        llvm-dis        opt
c-arcmnt-test   llvm-dwarfdump  yaml-bench
c-index-test    llvm-extract
118-165-65-128:Debug Jonathan$
```

To access those execution files, edit `.profile` (if you `.profile` not exists, please create file `.profile`), save `.profile` to `/Users/Jonathan/`, and enable `$PATH` by command `source .profile` as follows. Please add path `/Applications//Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/usr/bin` to `.profile` if you didn't add it after Xcode download.

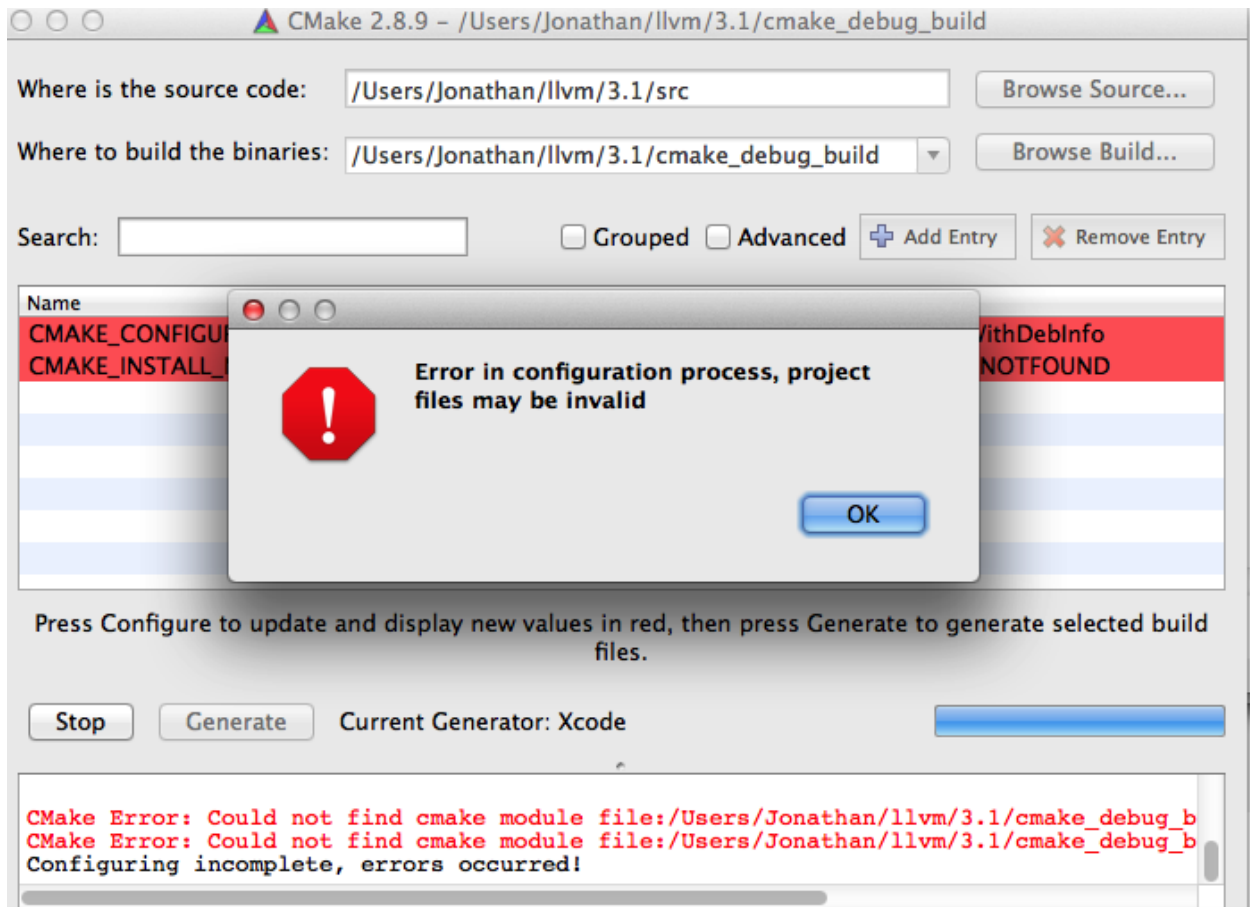


Figure 10.5: Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake – Before Adjust CMAKE_INSTALL_NAME_TOOL

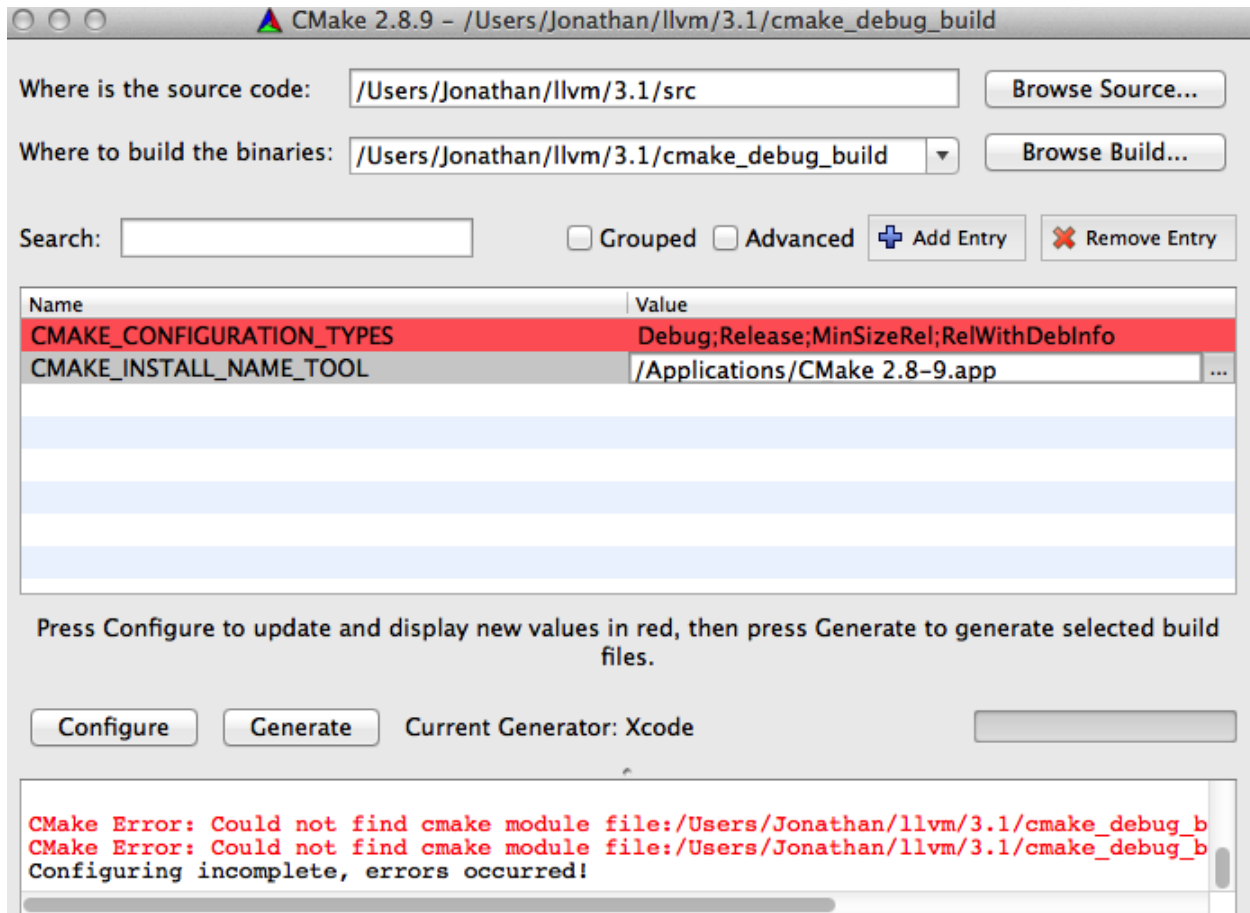


Figure 10.6: Select Cmake 2.8-9.app

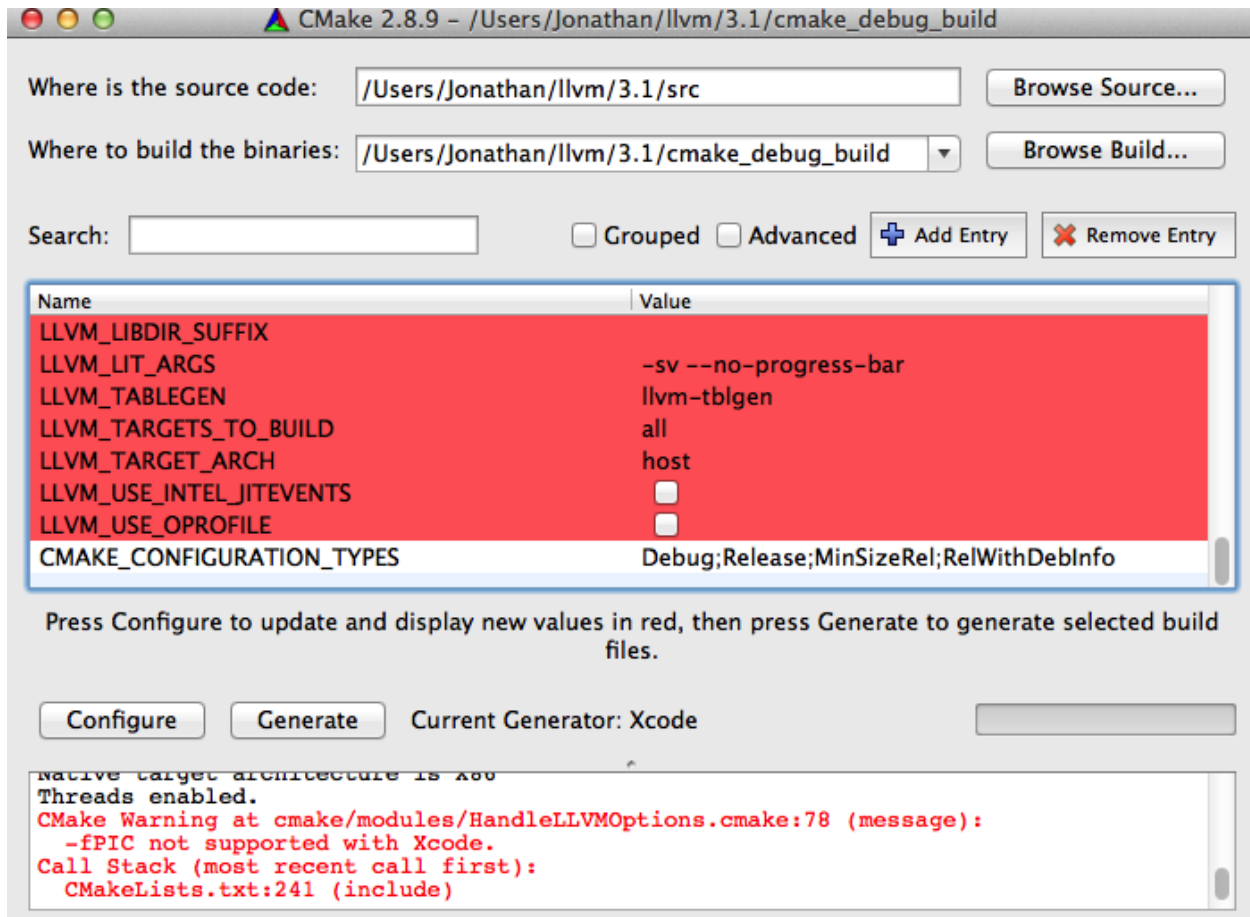


Figure 10.7: Click cmake Configure button first time

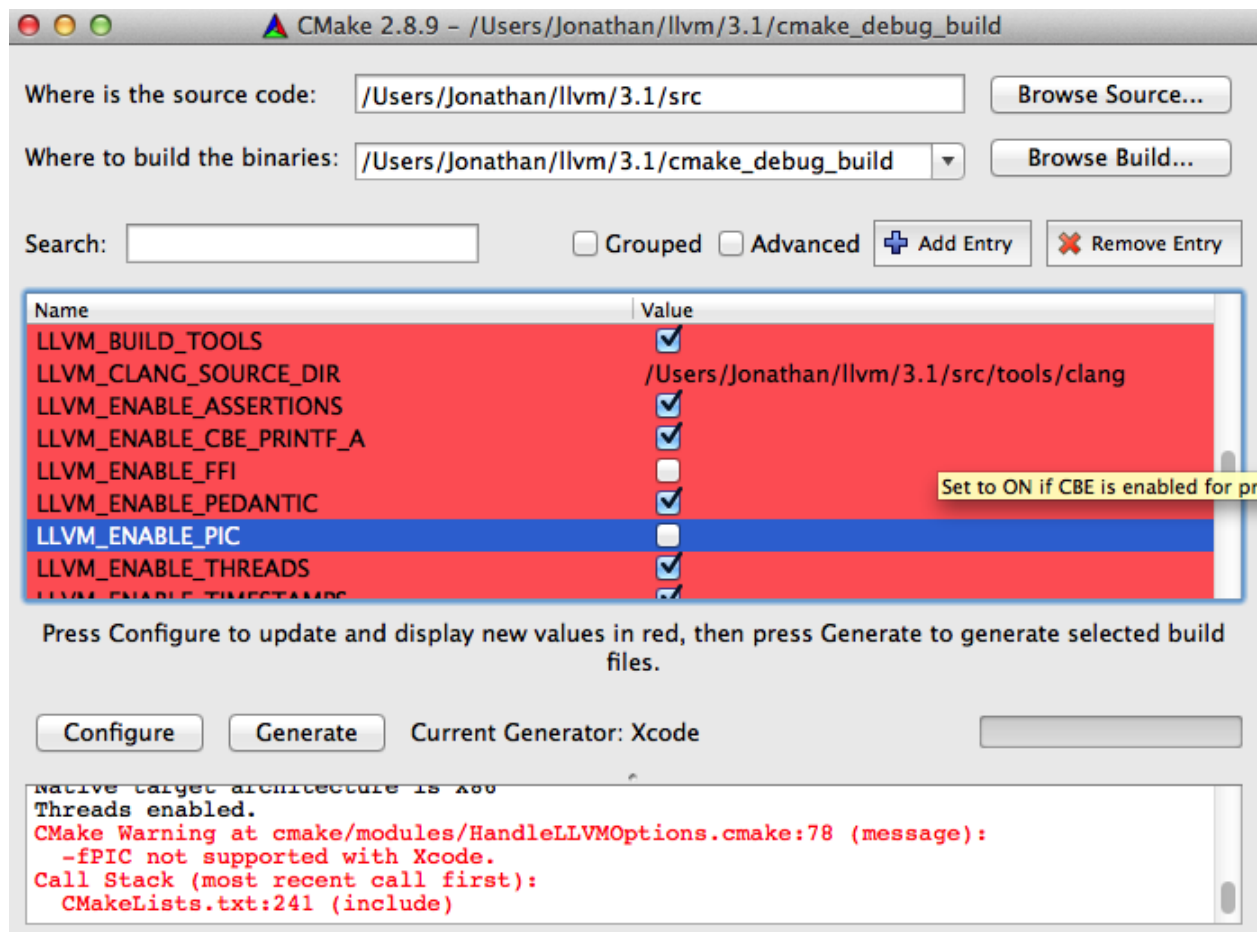


Figure 10.8: Check `CLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES`, `LLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES`, and uncheck `LLVM_ENABLE_PIC` in cmake

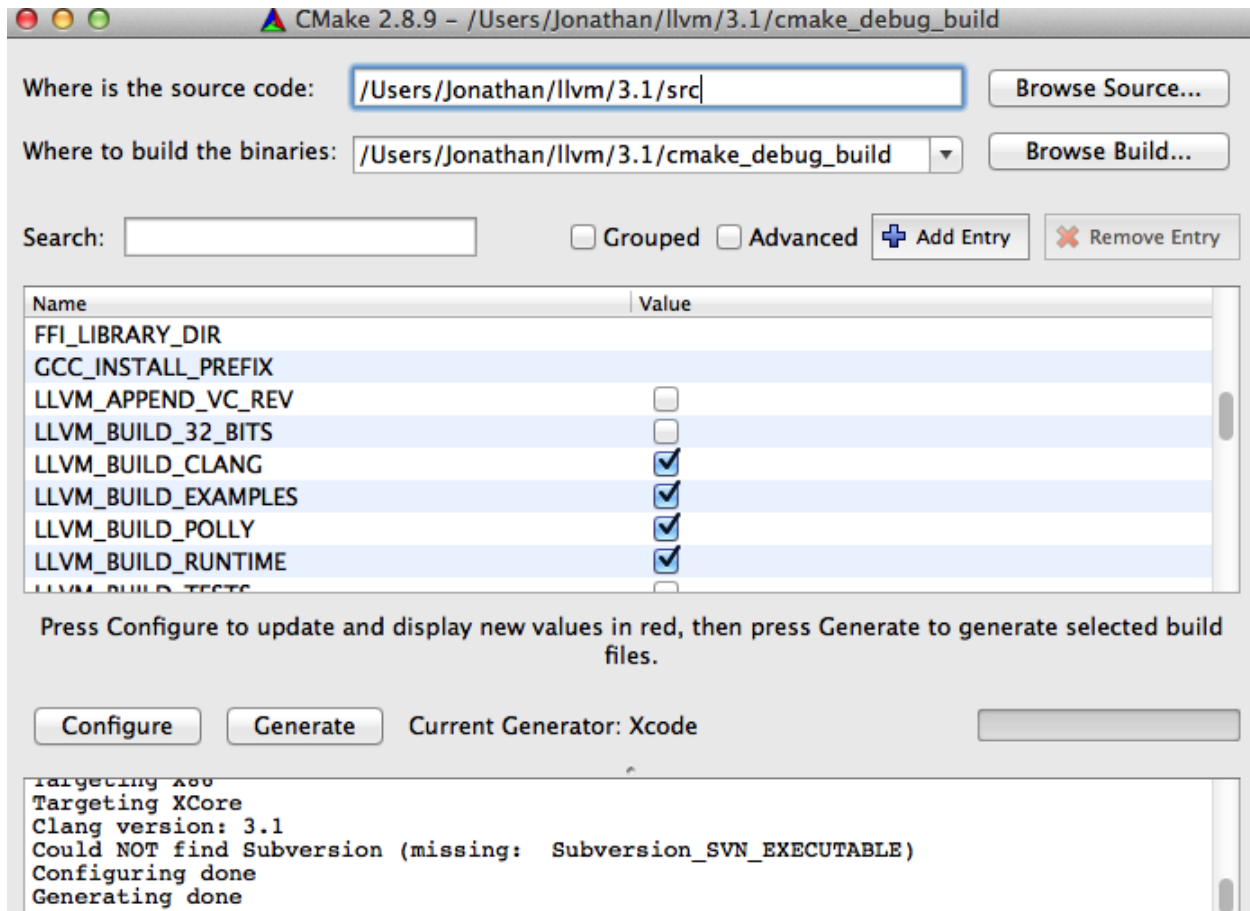


Figure 10.9: Click cmake Generate button second time

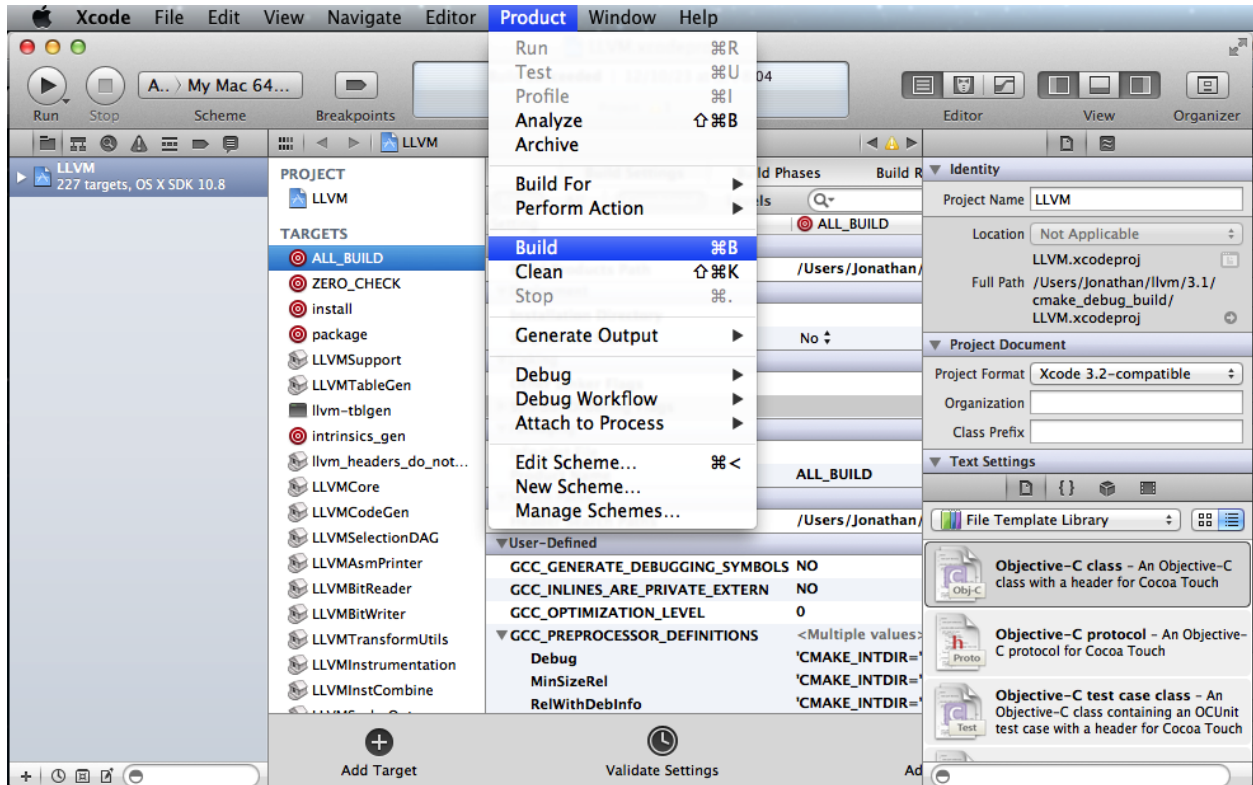


Figure 10.10: Click Build button to build LLVM.xcodeproj by Xcode

```
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$ cat .profile
export PATH=$PATH:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/usr/bin:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/Toolchains/XcodeDefault.xctoolchain/usr/bin:/Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS:/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug
export WORKON_HOME=$HOME/.virtualenvs
source /usr/local/bin/virtualenvwrapper.sh # where Homebrew places it
export VIRTUALENVWRAPPER_VIRTUALENV_ARGS='--no-site-packages' # optional
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$
```

10.1.4 Create LLVM.xcodeproj of supporting cpu0 by terminal cmake command

We have installed llvm with clang on directory llvm/3.1/. Now, we want to install llvm with our cpu0 backend code on directory llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1 in this section.

In “section Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake Graphic UI”⁵, we create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake graphic UI. We can create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake command on terminal also. Now, let’s repeat above steps to create llvm/3.1.test with cpu0 modified code, and check the copy is effected by `grep -R "Cpu0" .` | more as follows,

```
118-165-65-128:3.1.test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test
118-165-65-128:3.1.test Jonathan$ mkdir cpu0
```

⁵ <http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/install.html#create-llvm-xcodeproj-by-cmake-graphic-ui>

```
118-165-65-128:3.1.test Jonathan$ cd cpu0/
118-165-65-128:cpu0 Jonathan$ mkdir 1
118-165-65-128:cpu0 Jonathan$ cd 1
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ cp -rf /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/src .
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ cp -rf /Users/Jonathan/LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/src_files_modify/src .
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ cd src
118-165-65-128:src Jonathan$ grep -R "Cpu0" .|more
./cmake/config-ix.cmake: set(LLVM_NATIVE_ARCH Cpu0)
./CMakeLists.txt: Cpu0
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GPREL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT16,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:// VK_Cpu0_ABS,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_TLSGD,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_TLSLDM,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT_DISP,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT_PAGE,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h: VK_Cpu0_GOT_OFST
./include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:// Cpu0 Specific e_flags
./include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:// ELF Relocation byte types for Cpu0
./lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp: // AT_language, a 4 byte value. We use DW_LANG_Cpu0_Assembler as the dwarf2
./lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp:// MCOS->EmitIntValue(dwarf::DW_LANG_Cpu0_Assembler, 2);
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp: case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TLSGD:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp: case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp: case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp: case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO:
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GPREL: return "GPREL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL: return "GOT_CALL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT16: return "GOT16";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT: return "GOT";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI: return "ABS_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO: return "ABS_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_TLSGD: return "TLSGD";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_TLSLDM: return "TLSLDM";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_HI: return "DTPREL_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_LO: return "DTPREL_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL: return "GOTTPREL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI: return "TPREL_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO: return "TPREL_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_HI: return "GPOFF_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_LO: return "GPOFF_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT_DISP: return "GOT_DISP";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT_PAGE: return "GOT_PAGE";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp: case VK_Cpu0_GOT_OFST: return "GOT_OFST";
./lib/Target/LLVMBuild.txt:subdirectories = ARM CellSPU CppBackend Hexagon MBla
ze MSP430 Mips Cpu0 PTX PowerPC Sparc X86 XCore
```

```
118-165-65-128:src Jonathan$
```

Now, copy cpu0 example code from LLVMBackendTutorial/2/Cpu0 to src/lib/Target/, and please remove src/tools/clang since it will waste time to build clang for our working Cpu0 changes, as follows,

```
118-165-65-128:src Jonathan$ cd lib/Target/
118-165-65-128:Target Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/Target
118-165-65-128:Target Jonathan$
118-165-65-128:Target Jonathan$ cp -rf /Users/Jonathan/LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/2/Cpu0 .
118-165-65-128:Target Jonathan$ ls
ARM          Sparc
CMakeLists.txt      Target.cpp
CellSPU          TargetData.cpp
CppBackend        TargetELFWriterInfo.cpp
Cpu0              TargetInstrInfo.cpp
Hexagon          TargetIntrinsicInfo.cpp
LLVMBuild.txt      TargetJITInfo.cpp
MBlaze           TargetLibraryInfo.cpp
MSP430           TargetLoweringObjectFile.cpp
Makefile          TargetMachine.cpp
Mangler.cpp       TargetMachineC.cpp
Mips              TargetRegisterInfo.cpp
PTX              TargetSubtargetInfo.cpp
PowerPC          X86
README.txt        XCore
118-165-65-128:Target Jonathan$ cd ../../
118-165-65-128:src Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/4/src
118-165-65-128:src Jonathan$ rm -rf tools/clang
```

Now, it's ready for building 1/Cpu0 code by command `cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++ -DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -G "Xcode" ../src/` as follows. Remind, currently, the cmake terminal command can work with lldb debug, but the "section Create LLVM.xcodeproj by cmake Graphic UI"⁵ cannot.

```
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ mkdir cmake_debug_build
118-165-65-128:1 Jonathan$ cd cmake_debug_build/
118-165-65-128:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build
118-165-65-128:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -G "Xcode" ../src/
-- The C compiler identification is Clang 4.1.0
...
-- Targeting ARM
-- Targeting CellSPU
-- Targeting CppBackend
-- Targeting Hexagon
-- Targeting Mips
-- Targeting Cpu0
-- Targeting MBlaze
-- Targeting MSP430
-- Targeting PowerPC
-- Targeting PTX
-- Targeting Sparc
-- Targeting X86
```

```
-- Targeting XCore
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake
_debug_build
118-165-65-128:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$
```

Since Xcode use clang compiler and lldb instead of gcc and gdb, we can run lldb debug as follows,

```
118-165-65-128:InputFiles Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/InputFiles
118-165-65-128:InputFiles Jonathan$ clang -c ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-65-128:InputFiles Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch3.bc -o ch3.mips.s
118-165-65-128:InputFiles Jonathan$ lldb -- /Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/
1/cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
asm ch3.bc -o ch3.mips.s
Current executable set to '/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_bui
ld/bin/Debug/llc' (x86_64).
(lldb) b MipsTargetInfo.cpp:19
breakpoint set --file 'MipsTargetInfo.cpp' --line 19
Breakpoint created: 1: file = 'MipsTargetInfo.cpp', line = 19, locations = 1
(lldb) run
Process 6058 launched: '/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/
bin/Debug/llc' (x86_64)
Process 6058 stopped
* thread #1: tid = 0x1c03, 0x000000010077f231 llc`LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo
+ 33 at MipsTargetInfo.cpp:20, stop reason = breakpoint 1.1
  frame #0: 0x000000010077f231 llc`LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo + 33 at
  MipsTargetInfo.cpp:20
    17
    18     extern "C" void LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo() {
    19         RegisterTarget<Triple::mips,
-> 20             /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheMipsTarget, "mips", "Mips");
    21
    22         RegisterTarget<Triple::mipsel,
    23             /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheMipselTarget, "mipsel", "Mipsel");
(lldb) n
Process 6058 stopped
* thread #1: tid = 0x1c03, 0x000000010077f24f llc`LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo
+ 63 at MipsTargetInfo.cpp:23, stop reason = step over
  frame #0: 0x000000010077f24f llc`LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo + 63 at
  MipsTargetInfo.cpp:23
    20             /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheMipsTarget, "mips", "Mips");
    21
    22         RegisterTarget<Triple::mipsel,
-> 23             /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheMipselTarget, "mipsel", "Mipsel");
    24
    25         RegisterTarget<Triple::mips64,
    26             /*HasJIT=*/false> A(TheMips64Target, "mips64", "Mips64
    [experimental]");
(lldb) print X
(llvm::RegisterTarget<llvm::Triple::ArchType, true>) $0 = {}
(lldb) quit
118-165-65-128:InputFiles Jonathan$
```

About the lldb debug command, please reference ⁶ or lldb portal ⁷.

10.1.5 Install other tools on iMac

These tools mentioned in this section is for coding and debug. You can work even without these tools. Files compare tools Kdiff3 came from web site ⁸. FileMerge is a part of Xcode, you can type FileMerge in Finder – Applications as *Type FileMerge in Finder – Applications* and drag it into the Dock as *Drag FileMege into the Dock*.

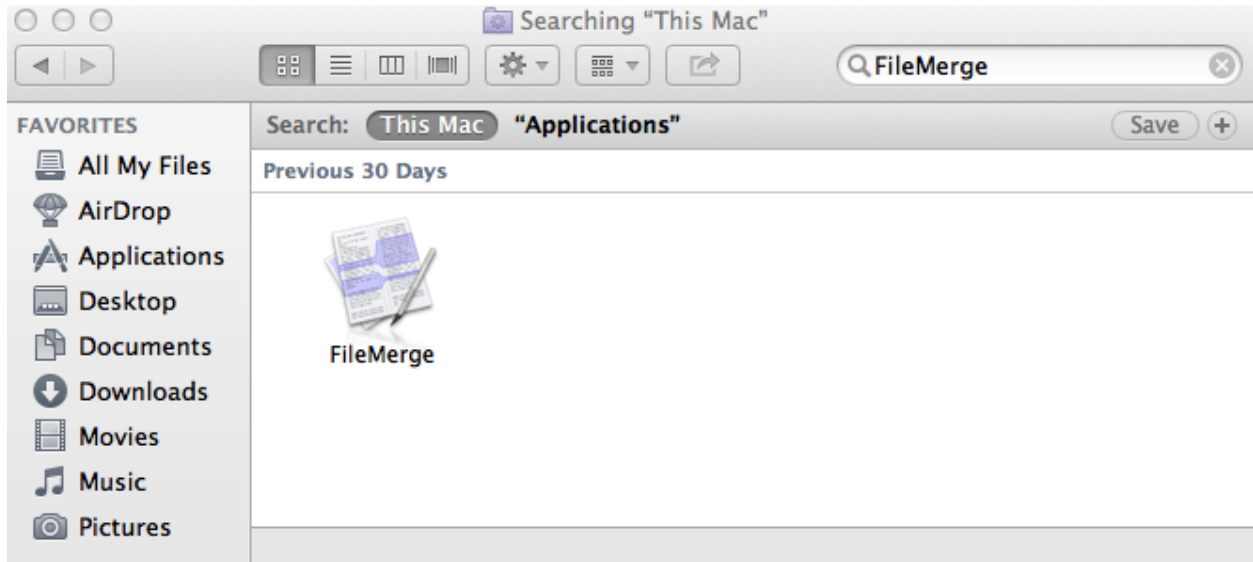


Figure 10.11: Type FileMerge in Finder – Applications



Figure 10.12: Drag FileMege into the Dock

Download tool Graphviz for display llvm IR nodes in debugging, ⁹. We choose mountainlion as *Download graphviz for llvm IR node display* since our iMac is Mountain Lion.

After install Graphviz, please set the path to .profile. For example, we install the Graphviz in directory /Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS/, so add this path to /User/Jonathan/.profile as follows,

```
118-165-12-177:InputFiles Jonathan$ cat /Users/Jonathan/.profile
export PATH=$PATH:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/usr/bin:
/Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS:/Users/Jonathan/llvm/3.1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/Debug
```

⁶ <http://lldb.llvm.org/lldb-gdb.html>

⁷ <http://lldb.llvm.org/>

⁸ <http://kdiff3.sourceforge.net>

⁹ http://www.graphviz.org/Download_macos.php

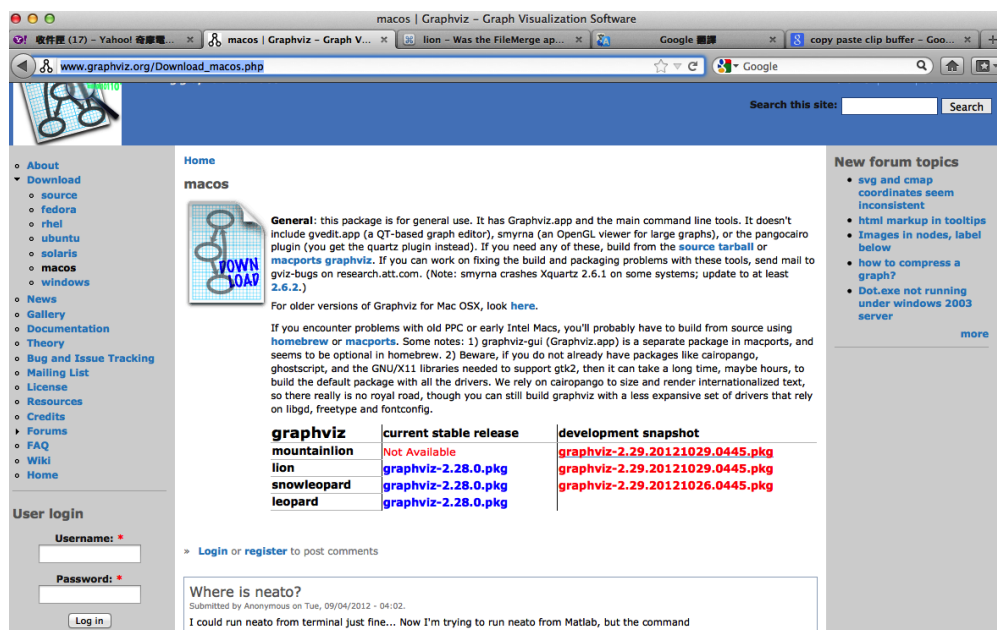


Figure 10.13: Download graphviz for llvm IR node display

The Graphviz information for llvm is in the section “SelectionDAG Instruction Selection Process” of ¹⁰ and the section “Viewing graphs while debugging code” of ¹¹. TextWrangler is for edit file with line number display and dump binary file like the obj file, *.o, that will be generated in chapter of Other instructions. You can download from App Store. To dump binary file, first, open the binary file, next, select menu “File – Hex Front Document” as *Select Hex Dump menu*. Then select “Front document’s file” as *Select Front document’s file in TextWrangler*.

Install binutils by command `brew install binutils` as follows,

```
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ brew install binutils
==> Downloading http://ftpmirror.gnu.org/binutils/binutils-2.22.tar.gz
##### 100.0%
==> ./configure --program-prefix=g --prefix=/usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22
--infodir=/usr/loca
==> make
==> make install
/usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22: 90 files, 19M, built in 4.7 minutes
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ objdump --help
-bash: objdump: command not found
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ man objdump
No manual entry for objdump
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ ls /usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22
COPYING      README      lib
ChangeLog    bin         share
INSTALL_RECEIPT.json  include     x86_64-apple-darwin12.2.0
118-165-77-214:binutils-2.23 Jonathan$ ls /usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22/bin
gaddr2line  gc++filt  gnm  gobjdump  greadelf  gstrings
gar  gelfedit  gobjcopy  granlib  gsize  gstrip
```

¹⁰ <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html>

¹¹ <http://llvm.org/docs/ProgrammersManual.html>

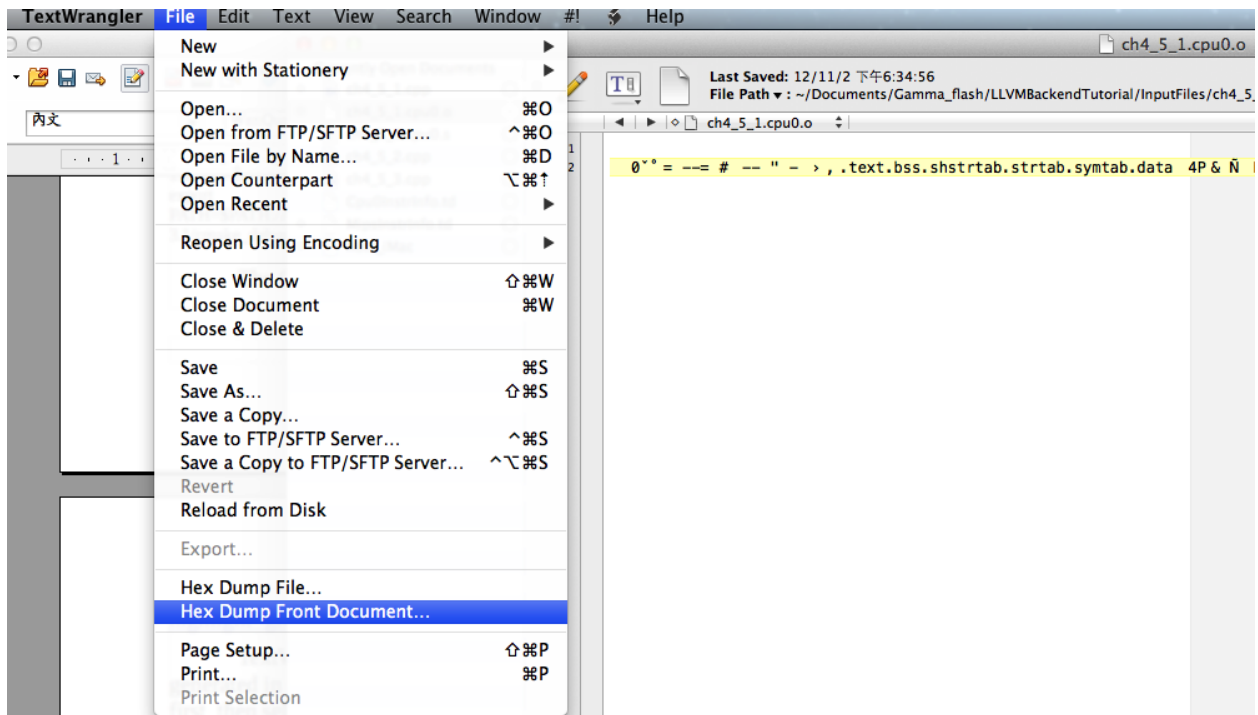


Figure 10.14: Select Hex Dump menu

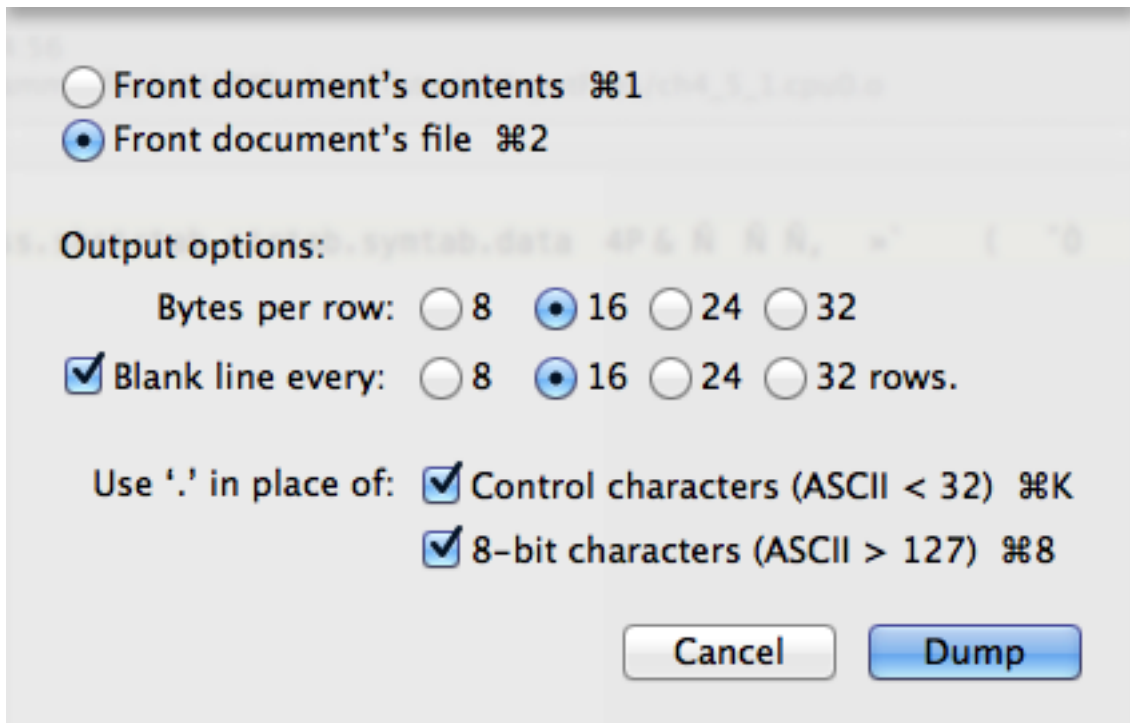


Figure 10.15: Select Front document's file in TextWrangler

10.2 Setting Up Your Linux Machine

10.2.1 Install LLVM 3.1 release build on Linux

First, install the llvm release build by,

1. Untar llvm source, rename llvm source with src.
2. Untar clang and move it src/tools/clang.
3. Untar compiler-rt and move it to src/project/compiler-rt as *Create llvm release build*.

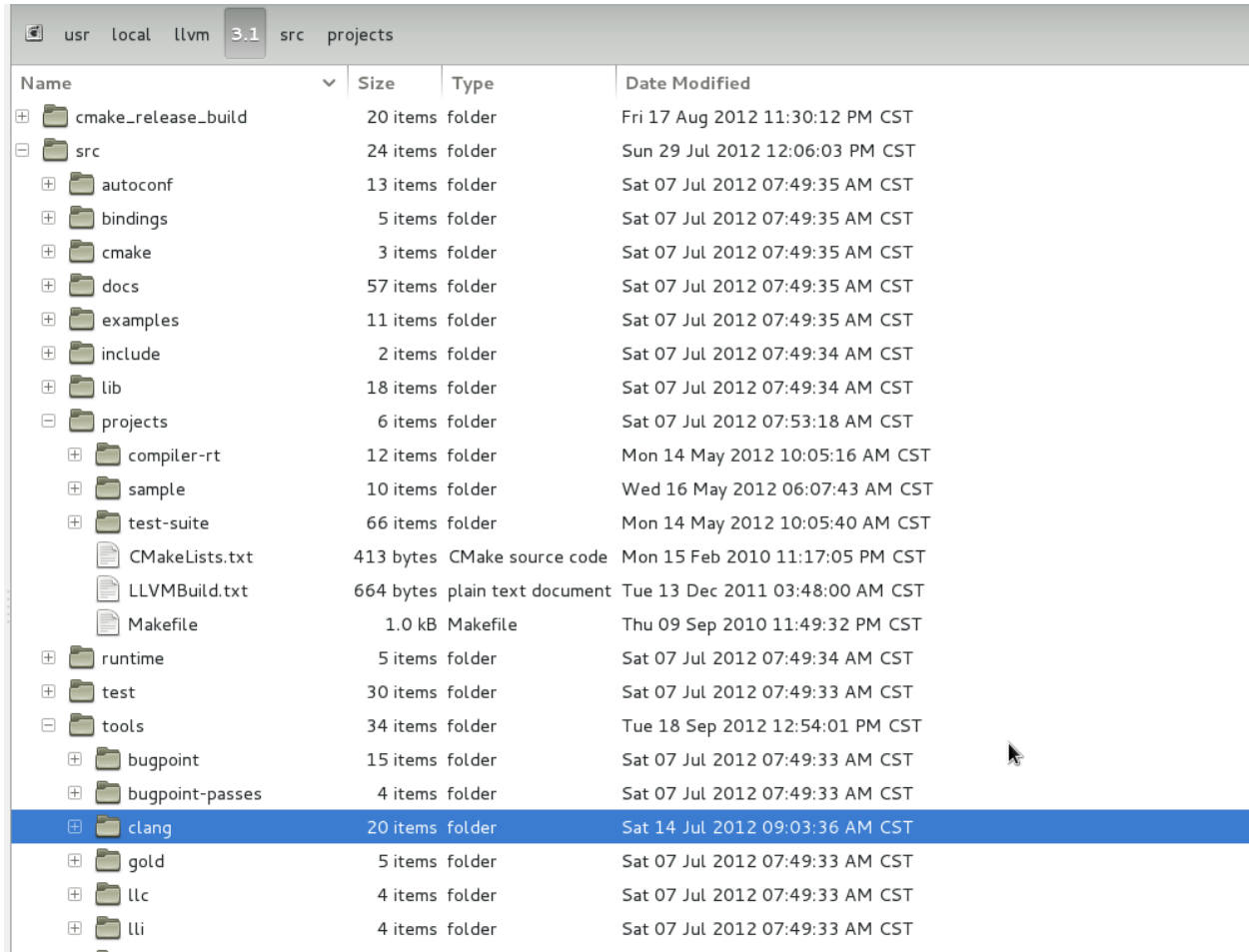


Figure 10.16: Create llvm release build

Next, build with cmake command, `cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release -DCLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -DLLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -G "Unix Makefiles" ../src/`, as follows.

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_release_build]$ cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release
-DCLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -DLLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -G "Unix Makefiles" ../src/
-- The C compiler identification is GNU 4.7.0
...
-- Constructing LLVMBuild project information
-- Targeting ARM
-- Targeting CellSPU
-- Targeting CppBackend
```

```
-- Targeting Hexagon
-- Targeting Mips
-- Targeting MBlaze
-- Targeting MSP430
-- Targeting PowerPC
-- Targeting PTX
-- Targeting Sparc
-- Targeting X86
-- Targeting XCore
-- Clang version: 3.1
-- Found Subversion: /usr/bin/svn (found version "1.7.6")
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build
```

After cmake, run command make, then you can get clang, llc, llvm-as, ..., in cmake_release_build/bin/ after a few tens minutes of build. Next, edit /home/Gamma/.bash_profile with adding /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/ bin to PATH to enable the clang, llc, ..., command search path, as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ pwd
/home/Gamma
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ cat .bash_profile
# .bash_profile

# Get the aliases and functions
if [ -f ~/.bashrc ]; then
    . ~/.bashrc
fi

# User specific environment and startup programs

PATH=$PATH:/usr/local/sphinx/bin:/usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin:
/opt/mips_linux_toolchain_clang/mips_linux_toolchain/bin:$HOME/.local/bin:
$HOME/bin

export PATH
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ source .bash_profile
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ $PATH
bash: /usr/lib64/qt-3.3/bin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/bin:/bin:/usr/local/sbin:
/usr/sbin:/usr/local/sphinx/bin:/opt/mips_linux_toolchain_clang/mips_linux_tool
chain/bin:/home/Gamma/.local/bin:/home/Gamma/bin:/usr/local/sphinx/bin:/usr/
local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin
```

10.2.2 Install cpu0 debug build on Linux

Make another copy /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src for cpu0 debug working project according the following list steps, the corresponding commands shown as follows,

- 1) Enter /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1 and cp -rf /usr/local/llvm/3.1/src ..
- 2) Update my modified files to support cpu0 by command, cp -rf /home/Gamma/Gamma_flash/LLVMBackendTutorial/s ..
- 3) Check step 3 is effect by command grep -R "Cpu0" . | more`. I add the Cpu0 backend support, so check with grep.
- 4) Enter src/lib/Target and copy example code LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/2/ Cpu0 to the directory by command cd lib/Target/ and cp -rf /home/Gamma/LLVMBackendTutorialExample/2/Cpu0 ..

5) Remove clang from 3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/tools/clang, and mkdir 3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build. Without this you will waste extra time for command make in cpu0 example code build.

```
[Gamma@localhost 1]$ pwd
/usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1
[Gamma@localhost 1]$ cp -rf /usr/local/llvm/3.1/src .
[Gamma@localhost Target]$ cd ../../
[Gamma@localhost src]$ grep -R "Cpu0" .|more
./CMakeLists.txt:  Cpu0
./lib/Target/LLVMBuild.txt:subdirectories = ARM CellSPU CppBackend Hexagon MBlaze
MSP430 Mips Cpu0 PTX PowerPC Sparc X86 XCore
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GPREL: return "GPREL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL: return "GOT_CALL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT16: return "GOT16";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT: return "GOT";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI: return "ABS_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO: return "ABS_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_TLSGD: return "TLSGD";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_TLSDM: return "TLSDM";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_HI: return "DTPREL_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_LO: return "DTPREL_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL: return "GOTTPREL";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI: return "TPREL_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO: return "TPREL_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_HI: return "GPOFF_HI";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_LO: return "GPOFF_LO";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_DISP: return "GOT_DISP";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_PAGE: return "GOT_PAGE";
./lib/MC/MCExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_OFST: return "GOT_OFST";
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp:  case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TLSGD:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp:  case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp:  case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI:
./lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp:  case MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO:
./lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp: // AT_language, a 4 byte value. We use DW_LANG_Cpu0_Assembler
as the dwarf2
./lib/MC/MCDwarf.cpp://  MCOS->EmitIntValue(dwarf::DW_LANG_Cpu0_Assembler, 2);
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GPREL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT16,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h://  VK_Cpu0_ABS,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_TLSGD,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_TLSDM,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_DTPREL_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOTTPREL,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_TPREL_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_TPREL_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_HI,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GPOFF_LO,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT_DISP,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT_PAGE,
./include/llvm/MC/MCExpr.h:  VK_Cpu0_GOT_OFST
./include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:// Cpu0 Specific e_flags
./include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:// ELF Relocation types for Cpu0
./cmake/config-ix.cmake:  set(LLVM_NATIVE_ARCH Cpu0)
[Gamma@localhost src]$ cd lib/Target/
```

```
[Gamma@localhost Target]$ cp -rf /home/Gamma/Gamma_flash/LLVMBackendTutorial/LLVMBackendTutorialExam
[Gamma@localhost Target]$ ls
ARM                Mips                TargetIntrinsicInfo.cpp
CellSPU            MSP430              TargetJITInfo.cpp
CMakeLists.txt     PowerPC             TargetLibraryInfo.cpp
CppBackend         PTX                 TargetLoweringObjectFile.cpp
Cpu0               README.txt          TargetMachineC.cpp
Hexagon            Sparc               TargetMachine.cpp
LLVMBuild.txt      Target.cpp           TargetRegisterInfo.cpp
Makefile           TargetData.cpp       TargetSubtargetInfo.cpp
Mangler.cpp        TargetELFWriterInfo.cpp X86
MBlaze             TargetInstrInfo.cpp  XCore
[Gamma@localhost Target]$ cd ../../
[Gamma@localhost src]$ rm -rf tools/clang
```

Now, go into directory 3.1.test/cpu0/1, create directory cmake_debug_build and do cmake like build the 3.1 release, but we do Debug build and use clang as our compiler instead, as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost src]$ cd ..
[Gamma@localhost 1]$ pwd
/usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1
[Gamma@localhost 1]$ mkdir cmake_debug_build
[Gamma@localhost 1]$ cd cmake_debug_build/
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ cmake
-DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++ -DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang
-DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -G "Unix Makefiles" ../src/
-- The C compiler identification is Clang 3.1.0
-- The CXX compiler identification is Clang 3.1.0
-- Check for working C compiler: /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin/clang
-- Check for working C compiler: /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin/clang
-- works
-- Detecting C compiler ABI info
-- Detecting C compiler ABI info - done
-- Check for working CXX compiler: /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin/clang++
-- Check for working CXX compiler: /usr/local/llvm/3.1/cmake_release_build/bin/clang++
-- works
-- Detecting CXX compiler ABI info
-- Detecting CXX compiler ABI info - done ...
-- Targeting Mips
-- Targeting Cpu0
-- Targeting MBlaze
-- Targeting MSP430
-- Targeting PowerPC
-- Targeting PTX
-- Targeting Sparc
-- Targeting X86
-- Targeting XCore
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$
```

Then do make as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ make
Scanning dependencies of target LLVMSupport
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APFloat.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APInt.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APSInt.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/Allocator.cpp.o
[ 1%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/BlockFrequency.
cpp.o ...
Linking CXX static library ../../lib/libgtest.a
[100%] Built target gtest
Scanning dependencies of target gtest_main
[100%] Building CXX object utils/unittest/CMakeFiles/gtest_main.dir/UnitTestMain
/
TestMain.cpp.o Linking CXX static library ../../lib/libgtest_main.a
[100%] Built target gtest_main
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$
```

Now, we are ready for the cpu0 backend development. We can run gdb debug as follows.

If your setting has anything about gdb errors, please follow the errors indication (maybe need to download gdb again).

Finally, try gdb as follows.

```
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ pwd
/home/Gamma/LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/InputFiles
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ clang -c ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]$ gdb -args /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/
cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.o
GNU gdb (GDB) Fedora (7.4.50.20120120-50.fc17)
Copyright (C) 2012 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "x86_64-redhat-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc.
..done.
(gdb) break MipsTargetInfo.cpp:19
Breakpoint 1 at 0xd54441: file /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/Target/
Mips/TargetInfo/MipsTargetInfo.cpp, line 19.
(gdb) run
Starting program: /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.o
[Thread debugging using libthread_db enabled]
Using host libthread_db library "/lib64/libthread_db.so.1".

Breakpoint 1, LLVMInitializeMipsTargetInfo ()
  at /usr/local/llvm/3.1.test/cpu0/1/src/lib/Target/Mips/TargetInfo/MipsTar
getInfo.cpp:20
20      /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheMipsTarget, "mips", "Mips");
(gdb) next
23      /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheMipselTarget, "mipsel", "Mipsel");
(gdb) print X
$1 = {<No data fields>}
(gdb) quit
```

A debugging session is active.

Inferior 1 [process 10165] will be killed.

Quit anyway? (y or n) y
[Gamma@localhost InputFiles]\$

10.2.3 Install other tools on Linux

Download Graphviz from ¹² according your Linux distribution. Files compare tools Kdiff3 came from web site ⁸.

¹² <http://www.graphviz.org/Download.php>

TODO LIST

Todo

Add info about LLVM documentation licensing.

(The *original entry* is located in /Users/Jonathan/test/2/lbd/source/about.rst, line 55.)

Todo

Find information on debugging LLVM within Xcode for Macs.

(The *original entry* is located in /Users/Jonathan/test/2/lbd/source/install.rst, line 24.)

Todo

Find information on building/debugging LLVM within Eclipse for Linux.

(The *original entry* is located in /Users/Jonathan/test/2/lbd/source/install.rst, line 25.)

Todo

Fix centering for figure captions.

(The *original entry* is located in /Users/Jonathan/test/2/lbd/source/install.rst, line 34.)

BOOK EXAMPLE CODE

The example code is available in:

<http://jonathan2251.github.com/lbd/LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode.tar.gz>

ALTERNATE FORMATS

The book is also available in: